

ROBOTICS **Product manual** IRB 1200



Trace back information: Workspace 23C version a19 Checked in 2023-10-04 Skribenta version 5.5.019

Product manual

IRB 1200-5/0.9 IRB 1200-5/0.9 type A IRB 1200-5/0.9 type B IRB 1200-7/0.7 IRB 1200-7/0.7 type A IRB 1200-7/0.7 type B

IRC5, OmniCore

Document ID: 3HAC046983-001

Revision: X

© Copyright 2014 - 2023 ABB. All rights reserved. Specifications subject to change without notice. The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damage to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

© Copyright 2014 - 2023 ABB. All rights reserved. Specifications subject to change without notice.

Table of contents

	Produ	Overview of this manual Product documentation low to read the product manual			
1	Safety				
	1.1	Safety information	21		
		1.1.1 Limitation of liability	21		
		1.1.2 Requirements on personnel	22		
	1.2	Safety signals and symbols			
	1.2	1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual	23		
		1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels	23 25		
	10				
	1.3	Robot stopping functions	31		
	1.4	Safety during installation and commissioning	32		
	1.5	Safety during operation	35		
	1.6	Safety during maintenance and repair	36		
		1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair	36		
		1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes	39		
		1.6.3 Brake testing	40		
	1.7	Safety during troubleshooting	41		
	1.8	Safety during decommissioning	42		
2	Insta	llation and commissioning	43		
	2.1	Introduction to installation and commissioning	43		
	2.2	Unpacking	44		
		2.2.1 Extra O-rings	44		
		2.2.2 Protection covers	46		
		2.2.3 Transportation bracket	47		
		2.2.4 Pre-installation procedure	51		
		2.2.5 Technical data	53		
		2.2.6 Dimensions	58		
		2.2.7 Working range	62		
		2.2.8 Risk of tipping/stability	65		
		2.2.9 The unit is sensitive to ESD	67		
	2.3	On-site installation	68		
		2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings	68		
		2.3.2 Lifting and turning a suspended mounted robot	73		
		2.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes			
		2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot	77		
		2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot			
		2.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances			
		2.3.7 Fitting of equipment on the robot			
		2.3.7.1 Introduction to fitting of equipment			
		2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment			
		2.3.7.3 Fitting tools on Hygienic robots			
	2.4	Installation of options			
	L .7	2.4.1 Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots	97		
		2.4.2 Installing the signal lamp for OmniCore robots			
	2.5	Restricting the working range	102		
	2.0				
		2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range			
	2.6	Making robot ready for operation			
	2.0	2.6.1 Additional installation procedure, Clean Room	100		
	2.7				
	<u> </u>	2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points	109		
		2.7.2 Customer connections			
	2.8	Start of robot in cold environments			
	2.0		11/		

	2.9	Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair	118	
3	Maint	laintenance 119		
	3.1	Introduction	119	
	3.2		120	
		3.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals	120	
		3.2.2 Maintenance schedule		
	3.3	Inspection activities	123	
		3.3.1 Inspecting the robot paint	123	
		3.3.2 Inspecting the robot cabling	124	
		3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels	125	
		3.3.4 Inspecting mechanical stops	130	
		3.3.5 Inspecting timing belts	133	
		3.3.6 Inspecting the signal lamp (option)	136	
	3.4	Replacement/changing activities	138	
		3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack	138	
		3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots	148	
	3.5	Cleaning activities	153	
		3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200	153	
		3.5.2 Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic	158	
4	Repa	ir	163	
<u> </u>	4.1	Introduction		
	4.2	General procedures		
	7.6	4.2.1 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts		
		4.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings		
		4.2.3 Sealing differences depending on protection class	171	
		4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots		
	4.3	Cable harness		
	4.0	4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package		
		4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealir	nas	
		······································	252	
		4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit		
		4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit	298	
	4.4	Upper and lower arms		
		4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm		
		4.4.2 Replacing the signal lamp		
		4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts		
		4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring		
		4.4.5 Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop		
		4.4.6 Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop	464	
		4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop		
	4.5	Swing and base		
		4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)	499	
		4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)		
		4.5.3 Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop		
	4.6	Motors and gearboxes		
		4.6.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit		
		4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit		
		4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit	671	
		4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley	693	
		4.6.5 Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley		
		4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt		
		4.6.7 Replacing the axis-5 motor with pulley		
		4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt		
		4.6.9 Replacing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit	783	

5	Calib	ration	811
	5.1	Introduction to calibration	811
		5.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology	811
		5.1.2 Calibration methods	812
		5.1.3 When to calibrate	
	5.2	Synchronization marks and axis movement directions	
		5.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes	816
		5.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes	
	5.3	Updating revolution counters	
		5.3.1 Updating revolution counters on IRC5 robots	
		5.3.2 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots	
	5.4	Calibrating with Axis Calibration method	
		5.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration	
		5.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration	
		5.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools	
		5.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure5.4.5 Reference calibration	007
	5.5	Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method	03/
	5.5 5.6	Calibrating with manual calibration method	
	5.0	5.6.1 Manual calibration method - calibration position	
		5.6.2 Manual calibration method - content of calibration toolkit 3HAC051256-001	
		5.6.3 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1	
		5.6.4 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1	
		5.6.5 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 2	
		5.6.6 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 4	
		5.6.7 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 5 and axis 6	865
	5.7	Verifying the calibration	869
	5.8	Checking the synchronization position	
6	Deco	mmissioning	873
6		mmissioning	873
6	6.1	Introduction to decommissioning	873 873
6	6.1 6.2	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information	873 873 874
6	6.1	Introduction to decommissioning	873 873 874
<u>6</u> 7	6.1 6.2 6.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 873 874 876 876
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot ot description Introduction	873 873 874 876 877 877
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot t description Introduction Type A of IRB 1200	873 873 874 876 877 877 881
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot ot description Introduction Type A of IRB 1200 Type B of IRB 1200	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot t description Introduction Type A of IRB 1200 Type B of IRB 1200 Description of spare part versions	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot ot description Introduction	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot At description Introduction	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 883 884
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 883 884 884
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 884 886 888
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 884 886 888 888 888 889
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 884 886 888 888 888 889
	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 874 876 877 877 881 882 883 883 884 886 888 888 888 889
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 873 874 876 877 881 882 883 883 883 883 884 886 888 889 890 891
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot et description Introduction Type A of IRB 1200 Type B of IRB 1200 Description of spare part versions 7.4.1 Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots 7.4.2 Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots 7.4.3 Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots 7.4.4 Spare part versions for the housing on Type A robots 7.4.5 Spare part versions for the tubular on Type A robots 7.4.6 Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots rence information	873 873 874 876 877 881 882 883 883 883 884 888 889 890 891 891
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Refer 8.1	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot	873 873 874 876 877 881 882 883 883 884 888 888 889 890 891 891 891 892 893
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Refer 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information	873 873 874 876 877 887 887 887 883 883 883 884 886 888 889 890 891 891 891 892 893 894
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Refer 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot t description Introduction	873 873 874 876 877 887 887 883 883 883 884 886 888 889 890 891 891 891 891 892 893 894 897
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Refer 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information	873 873 874 876 877 887 887 887 883 883 883 884 886 888 889 890 891 891 891 891 892 893 894 897 898
7	6.1 6.2 6.3 Robo 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Refer 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5	Introduction to decommissioning Environmental information Scrapping of robot t description Introduction	873 873 874 876 877 881 882 883 883 884 886 888 889 890 891 891 891 891 892 893 894 895

9	Spar	e parts	905
	9.1	Spare part lists and illustrations	905
10	Circu	it diagrams	907
	10.1	Circuit diagrams	907
Ind	ex		909

Overview of this manual

About this manual

This manual contains instructions for:

- mechanical and electrical installation of the robot
- · maintenance of the robot
- mechanical and electrical repair of the robot.

Usage

This manual should be used during:

- installation, from lifting the robot to its work site and securing it to the foundation, to making it ready for operation
- maintenance work
- repair work and calibration.

Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- installation personnel
- maintenance personnel
- repair personnel.

Prerequisites

Maintenance/repair/installation personnel working with an ABB Robot must:

• be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/repair/maintenance work.

Product manual scope

The manual covers covers all variants and designs of the IRB 1200. Some variants and designs may have been removed from the business offer and are no longer available for purchase.

Organization of chapters

The manual is organized in the following chapters:

Chapter	Contents
Safety, service	Safety information that must be read through before performing any installation or service work on robot. Contains general safety aspects as well as more specific information on how to avoid personal injuries and damage to the product.
Installation and commis- sioning	Required information about lifting and installation of the robot.
Maintenance	Step-by-step procedures that describe how to perform mainten- ance of the robot. Based on a maintenance schedule that may be used to plan periodical maintenance.
Repair	Step-by-step procedures that describe how to perform repair activities of the robot. Based on available spare parts.

Chapter	Contents
Calibration	Calibration procedures and general information about calibration.
Decommissioning	Environmental information about the robot and its components.
Reference information	Useful information when performing installation, maintenance or repair work. Includes lists of necessary tools, additional doc- uments, safety standards, etc.
Spare parts and exploded views	Reference to the spare part list for the robot.
Circuit diagram	Reference to the circuit diagram for the robot.

References

Documentation referred to in the manual, is listed in the table below.

General

Document name	Document ID
Product manual, spare parts - IRB 1200	3HAC046984-001
Product specification - IRB 1200	Document.ID-1
Safety manual for robot - Manipulator and IRC5 or OmniCore con- troller ⁱ	3HAC031045-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 1200	3HAC046307-003
Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes	3HAC042927-001
Technical reference manual - System parameters	3HAC050948-001

This manual contains all safety instructions from the product manuals for the manipulators and the controllers.

IRC5

i

Document name	Document ID
Product manual - IRC5	3HAC021313-001
Product manual - IRC5 Compact	3HAC047138-001
Operating manual - IRC5 with FlexPendant	3HAC050941-001

OmniCore

Document name	Document ID
Product manual - OmniCore C30 3HAC060860-00	
Product manual - OmniCore C90XT	3HAC073706-001
Product manual - OmniCore E10 3HAC079399-007	
Operating manual - OmniCore 3HAC065036	

Revisions

Revision	Description
-	First edition.

Revision	Description
A	 Changes made in this revision: Information added about removal of axis-4 mechanical stop and axis-4 FPC unit from housing extender unit, prior to replacing the radial sealing at the housing extender unit. See <i>Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings on page 252.</i>
	 Information added about disconnecting and reconnecting the air hoses at the tubular, when replacing the axis-4 timing belt. See <i>Replacing the axis-4 timing belt on page 746</i>.
	 Information added about removing screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide inside housing, when removing axis-3 drive unit, see Creating space for separation of upper and lower arm on page 676. Information also added about refitting the same screws, throughout complete manual.
	 Information added about releasing the holding brakes prior to ro- tating axes manually, in calibration procedures, chapter <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.
	 Working range of axis 6 corrected from ±360° to ±400°, see Working range on page 62.
	 Information added about extra o-rings that are enclosed with the robot at delivery, see <i>Installation of extra O-ring on page 78</i> and <i>Installation of extra O-ring on page 111</i>. Also added to repair pro- cedures, where needed.
	Changed pin number for 24V connection, see <i>Manually releasing</i> the brakes on page 74.

Revision	Description
В	 Changes made in this revision: Information regarding how to read the procedures in this product manual are updated, see <i>How to read the product manual on page 19</i>.
	 Information added about protection covers for water and dust proofing, see <i>Protection covers on page 46</i>.
	• Information added about transportation bracket that is used during shipping and transport and must be removed before lifting the robot, see <i>Transportation bracket on page 47</i> and <i>Attaching the roundslings on page 68</i> .
	 Timing belt tension of axis-4 and axis-5 motors changed from 13 N and 15 N to 26 N and 30 N, respectively, in repair procedures, chapter <i>Repair on page 163</i>.
	 Tightening torque of M3 screws used on plastic materials changed from 1.5 Nm to 0.3 Nm, in repair procedures, chapter <i>Repair on</i> page 163.
	• Total amount of harmonic grease 4B No.2 changed from 42 g to 32 g, see <i>Replacing the axis-3 drive unit on page 671</i> .
	• Information added about checking PTFE film before refitting the cable housing cover, see <i>Replacing the EIB/SMB unit on page 298</i> , <i>Replacing the axis-2 drive unit on page 649</i> , <i>Replacing the axis-3 drive unit on page 671</i> , and <i>Replacing the axis-4 timing belt on page 746</i> .
	 No need to remove and refit cable bracket when removing and refitting the cable package to the axis-1 sealing ring, see <i>Replacing</i> the main cable package on page 176.
	• No need to remove and refit connector plate when removing and refitting the axis-5 motor with pulley, see <i>Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings</i> on page 252, Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley on page 693, Replacing the axis-5 motor with pulley on page 764.
	• No need to remove and refit mechanical stop screw when remov- ing the axis-4 mechanical stop, see <i>Replacing the axis-4 mechan-</i> <i>ical stop on page 467</i> .
	• Information modified about replacing motor bracket together with motor flange when removing and refitting the axis-4 motor, see <i>Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley on page 693</i> and <i>Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley on page 734</i> .
	• No need to remove tilt covers when replacing axis-5 drive unit, see <i>Replacing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit on page 783</i> .

Revision	Description	
С	 Changes made in this revision Flange sealing changed from 12340011-116 Loctite 574 to 3HAC026759-002 Sikaflex-521FC for small cover on the housing see Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings on page 252. 	
	 Tightening torque for attachment screws on lifting accessories is changed from 40 Nm to 15 Nm. 	
	 Tightening torque for lower arm cable 	
	 Tightening torque for the axis-4 FPC unit attachment screws is changed from 1.5 Nm to 0.3 Nm. 	
	 Added a tightening torque for the attachment screws of the axis 1 calibration stop pin and the axis-1 calibration pin. 	
	 Added a caution note to keep a straight line when fitting the axis 1 calibration pin. 	
	 Article number of grease harmonic grease 4B No. 2 changed from 3HAC031695-001 to 3HAC037302-001. 	
	• Total amount of harmonic grease 4B No.2 for axis 2 and axis 5 changed from 80 g and 12 g to 60 g and 9 g, respectively,	
	 Maximum revolution of axis 6 corrected to ±242°, see Working range on page 64. 	
	Clean Room option added.	
	Food grade lubrication option added.	
	 Spare part numbers for several gaskets (IP67) updated. 	
	 The base, the swing and the axis-1 sealing ring are updated due to IP67 improvements 	
D	Published in release R16.2. The following updates are done in this revision:	
	New standard calibration method introduced (Axis Calibration). See <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .	
	 Information about grounding point is added, see Grounding and bonding point on manipulator on page 111. 	
	 Foundry Plus option added. 	
E	Published in release R17.1. The following updates are done in this revision:	
	A new standard IEC 61340-5-1:2010 added. See Applicable standards on page 892.	
	 V-ring on axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 added as a spare part. 	
	Notes added for spare part versions. See <i>Description of spare</i> part versions on page 883.	
	 Information about Type B robots supporting SafeMove 2 added Plug on base added to options IP67 and Foundry Plus. 	

Revision	Description	
F	Published in release R17.2. The following updates are made in this revision:	
	 Caution about removing metal residues added in sections about EIB/SMB boards. 	
	 Information about minimum resonance frequency added. 	
	 Bending radius for static floor cables added. 	
	Updated list of applicable standards.	
	 Article number for the Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration is changed. 	
	Section Start of robot in cold environments on page 117 added.	
	 Tightening torque of screws securing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit updated. 	
	 Information about mechanically restricting the working range ad- ded. 	
	Updated description about Clean Room class.	
	 Label added to remind the fitting of extra o-ring for robots with protection class IP67 and with protection type Foundry Plus. 	
G	Published in release R18.1. The following updates are made in this revision:	
	Added sections in <i>General procedures on page 164</i>	
	Safety section restructured.	
	 Note added to clarify the usage of the two M4 thread holes on the upper arm. 	
	 Added transportation bracket information for robots delivered with a force control package. 	
	Updated extra o-ring fitting information for robots with protection type Clean Room and robots with food grade lubrication.	
	 Note added to calibration chapter to emphasize the requirement of equally dressed robot when using previously created reference calibration values. 	
	 Information about myABB Business Portal added. 	
	 Spare part number of axis-4 gearbox shaft changed from 3HAC049631-001 to 3HAC044692-001. 	
н	Published in release R18.2. The following updates are made in this revision:	
	Added customer connection information.	
	 Spare part information about axis-2 drive unit and axis-3 drive unit updated. 	
	 Updated axis-4 and -5 timing belt inspection procedure. 	
	Added note for transportation bracket removal procedure.	
J	Published in release R18.2. The following updates are made in this revision:	
	Updated references.	
к	 Published in release 19B. The following updates are made in this revision: New touch up color Graphite White available. See <i>Cut the paint</i> or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164. 	
	• New article numbers for manipulator cables in section <i>Robot cables on page 109</i> .	

Revision Description	
L	 Published in release 19D. The following updates are made in this revision Spare part version of axis-1 sealing ring updated. See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886
	 Compatibility between cable harness and axis-1 sealing ring ad ded. See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.
	 Note added about the need to calibrate if the robot is other than floor mounted. See When to calibrate on page 815.
М	 Published in release 20B. The following updates are made in this revision Clarified and added information in mounting instructions for rotating sealings, see <i>Mounting instructions for sealings on page 167</i>
	 Clarified text about position of robot and added table with dependencies between axes during Axis Calibration.
	 Article number of Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration is change from 3HAC062326-001 to 3HAC074119-001.
	Replaced article number and name of grease, previously 3HAB3537-1.
	Added information about Wrist Optimization in calibration chapte
N	 Published in release 20C. The following updates are made in this revisior Flange sealing changed from 12340011-116 Loctite 574 to 3HAC026759-003 Sikaflex 521FC for tubular covers for robots with protection class IP67 and protection type Clean Room.
	Updated the figure of customer connection information.
Р	Published in release 20D. The following updates are made in this revisior Added information about maintenance activity of robot overhau
Q	 Published in release 21A. The following updates are made in this revisior Added step about applying Loctite 243 to screws securing the cable housing cover on lower arm for robots with protection clas IP67, protection types Clean Room and Foundry Plus and food grade lubrication.
R	 Published in release 21B. The following updates are done in this revisior Text regarding fastener quality is updated, see <i>Fastener quality</i> on page 94.
	• Text regarding diameter of air hoses is updated, see <i>Customer</i> connections on page 114.
S	Published in release 21D. The following updates are done in this revision Hygienic option added.
	Controllers OmniCore C30, OmniCore C90XT and OmniCore E1 supported.
т	 Published in release 22A. The following updates are done in this revisior IRB 1200 Hygienic supported working with OmniCore C line cor trollers. See <i>Manipulator description on page 877</i>.
	 Added information about length of thread engagement for attack ment screws.
	 Modified the replacing interval of the axis-6 sealing set on tool flange for Hygienic robots from 60000 operating hours to 6000 hours.
	• Updated information about Gleitmo treated screws, see <i>Screw joints on page 894</i> .

Revision	Description	
U	 Published in release 22B. The following updates are done in this revision: IRB 1200 Hygienic supported working with OmniCore E line controllers. See <i>Manipulator description on page 877</i>. 	
	Updated wipe-down cleaning procedure for Hygienic robots.	
	 Added cleaning instructions for robots with protection type Clean Room. 	
	 Updated the tightening torques for SMB connector screws and battery pack plate screws. 	
	Updated spare part article numbers of main cable harnesses for IRB 1200 Type B.	
V	 Published in release 22C. The following updates are done in this revision: Updated tightening torque for securing the seal ring unit on Hygienic robots. 	
	 Updated the extra O-ring label figure because the label is now available to all protection options of IP67, clean room, foundry plus, Hygienic and food grade lubrication. 	
	Added maintenance activity of replacing axes 1-4 mechanical stops for Clean Room robots that have disinfection requirements.	
	Added disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots.	
	 Updated spare part article numbers for swing, axis-2 sealing ring and axis-3 sealing ring. 	
	Added robot description for new appearance design.	
w	 Published in release 23B. The following updates are done in this revision: Added spare part Swing bracket transfer 3HAC044925-001 and tool Customer interface kit 3HAC082459-001. 	
	 Updated spare part article numbers of gasket on process hub, gasket for tubular cover and gasket for tubular cable housing cover. 	
x	 Published in release 23C. The following updates are done in this revision: Updated fitting note for M2 variseal sealing 3HAC044641-009 because it is not used with robots in protection class IP40. 	
	 Added a note to installation step of protection cover for turning disk for Foundry Plus robots. 	
	Added the tightening torque required for the protective plug used on tilt unit.	

Product documentation

Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.



All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- · Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- Calibration.
- Troubleshooting.
- Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with corresponding figures (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- References to circuit diagrams.

Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products, for example lubrication, the RAPID language, and system parameters.

Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, software).
- How to install included or required hardware.
- How to use the application.

• Examples of how to use the application.

Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and troubleshooters.

How to read the product manual

Reading the procedures	
	The procedures contain all information required for the installation or service activity and can be printed out separately when needed for a certain service procedure.
Safety information	
	The manual includes a separate safety chapter that must be read through before proceeding with any service or installation procedures. All procedures also include specific safety information when dangerous steps are to be performed.
	Read more in the chapter <i>Safety on page 21</i> .
Illustrations	
	The product is illustrated with general figures that does not take painting or protection type in consideration.
	Likewise, certain work methods or general information that is valid for several product models, can be illustrated with illustrations that show a different product model than the one that is described in the current manual.

This page is intentionally left blank

1 Safety

1.1 Safety information

1.1.1 Limitation of liability

Limitation of liability

Any information given in this manual regarding safety must not be construed as a warranty by ABB that the industrial robot will not cause injury or damage even if all safety instructions are complied with.

The information does not cover how to design, install and operate a robot system, nor does it cover all peripheral equipment that can influence the safety of the robot system.

In particular, liability cannot be accepted if injury or damage has been caused for any of the following reasons:

- Use of the robot in other ways than intended.
- Incorrect operation or maintenance.
- Operation of the robot when the safety devices are defective, not in their intended location or in any other way not working.
- When instructions for operation and maintenance are not followed as intended.
- Non-authorized design modifications of the robot.
- Repairs on the robot and its spare parts carried out by in-experienced or non-qualified personnel.
- Foreign objects.
- Force majeure.

Spare parts and equipment

ABB supplies original spare parts and equipment which have been tested and approved for their intended use. The installation and/or use of non-original spare parts and equipment can negatively affect the safety, function, performance, and structural properties of the robot. ABB is not liable for damages caused by the use of non-original spare parts and equipment. 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

General

Only personnel with appropriate training are allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, and use the robot. This includes electrical, mechanical, hydraulics, pneumatics, and other hazards identified in the risk assessment.

Persons who are under the influence of alcohol, drugs or any other intoxicating substances are not allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, or use the robot.

The plant liable must make sure that the personnel is trained on the robot, and on responding to emergency or abnormal situations.

Personal protective equipment

Use personal protective equipment, as stated in the instructions.

1.2 Safety signals and symbols

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all safety signals used in the user manuals. Each signal consists of:

- A caption specifying the hazard level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of hazard.
- Instruction about how to reduce the hazard to an acceptable level.
- A brief description of remaining hazards, if not adequately reduced.

Hazard levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the hazard levels used throughout this manual.

Symbol	Designation	Significance
	DANGER	Signal word used to indicate an imminently hazard- ous situation which, if not avoided, will result in ser- ious injury.
	WARNING	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
	ELECTRICAL SHOCK	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation related to electrical hazards which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
!	CAUTION	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in slight injury.
	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in severe damage to the product.
	NOTE	Signal word used to indicate important facts and conditions.

1 Safety

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual *Continued*

Symbol	Designation	Significance
	TIP	Signal word used to indicate where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way.

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Introduction to symbols

This section describes safety symbols used on labels (stickers) on the manipulator.

Symbols are used in combinations on the labels, describing each specific warning. The descriptions in this section are generic, the labels can contain additional information such as values.



The symbols on the labels on the product must be observed. Additional symbols added by the integrator must also be observed.

Types of symbols

Both the manipulator and the controller are marked with symbols, containing important information about the product. This is important for all personnel handling the robot, for example during installation, service, or operation.

The safety labels are language independent, they only use graphics. See *Symbols* on safety labels on page 25.

The information labels can contain information in text.

Symbols on safety labels

Symbol	Description
xx090000812	Warning! Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc.
xx0900000811	Caution! Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown.
xx090000839	Prohibition Used in combinations with other symbols.

25

Symbol	Description
xx090000813	 See user documentation Read user documentation for details. Which manual to read is defined by the symbol: No text: <i>Product manual</i>. EPS: <i>Application manual - Electronic Position Switches</i>.
xx090000816	Before disassembly, see product manual
xx0900000815	Do not disassemble Disassembling this part can cause injury.
xx090000814	Extended rotation This axis has extended rotation (working area) compared to standard.
xx090000808	Brake release Pressing this button will release the brakes. This means that the robot arm can fall down.

Symbol	Description
xx0900000810	Tip risk when loosening bolts The robot can tip over if the bolts are not securely fastened.
x090000817	Crush Risk of crush injuries.

Symbol	Description
xx090000818	Heat Risk of heat that can cause burns. (Both signs are used)
xx0900000819	Moving robot The robot can move unexpectedly.
xx1000001141	

Symbol	Description
(6) (5) (4) (3) (2) (1) xx090000820	Brake release buttons
(1 2 3 6 xx1000001140	
xx0900000821	Lifting bolt
R x x1000001242	Adjustable chain sling with shortener
xx0900000822	Lifting of robot
xx090000823	Oil Can be used in combination with prohibition if oil is not allowed.
xx090000824	Mechanical stop

29

Symbol	Description
xx1000001144	No mechanical stop
xx0900000825	Stored energy Warns that this part contains stored energy. Used in combination with <i>Do not disassemble</i> symbol.
bar Max xx0900000826	Pressure Warns that this part is pressurized. Usually contains additional text with the pressure level.
xx090000827	Shut off with handle Use the power switch on the controller.
xx1400002648	Do not step Warns that stepping on these parts can cause damage to the parts.

1.3 Robot stopping functions

Protective stop and emergency stop

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

For more information see:

- Product manual OmniCore C30
- Product manual OmniCore C90XT
- Product manual OmniCore E10
- Product manual IRC5
- Product manual IRC5 Compact

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

National or regional regulations

The integrator of the robot system is responsible for the safety of the robot system.

The integrator is responsible that the robot system is designed and installed in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The integrator of the robot system is required to perform a risk assessment.

Layout

The robot integrated to a robot system shall be designed to allow safe access to all spaces during installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

If robot movement can be initiated from an external control panel then an emergency stop must also be available.

If the manipulator is delivered with mechanical stops, these can be used for reducing the working space.

A perimeter safeguarding, for example a fence, shall be dimensioned to withstand the following:

- The force of the manipulator.
- The force of the load handled by the robot if dropped or released at maximum speed.
- The maximum possible impact caused by a breaking or malfunctioning rotating tool or other device fitted to the robot.

The maximum TCP speed and the maximum velocity of the robot axes are detailed in the section *Robot motion* in the product specification for the respective manipulator.

Consider exposure to hazards, such as slipping, tripping, and falling.

Hazards due to the working position and posture for a person working with or near the robot shall be considered.

Hazards due to noise emission from the robot needs to be considered.

Consider hazards from other equipment in the robot system, for example, that guards remain active until identified hazards are reduced to an acceptable level.

Allergenic material

See *Environmental information on page 874* for specification of allergenic materials in the product, if any.

Securing the robot to the foundation

The robot must be properly fixed to its foundation/support, as described in the respective product manual.

When the robot is installed at a height, hanging, or other than mounted directly on the floor, there will be additional hazards.

Electrical safety

Incoming mains must be installed to fulfill national regulations.

The power supply wiring to the robot must be sufficiently fused and if necessary, it must be possible to disconnect it manually from the mains power.

The power to the robot must be turned off with the main switch and the mains power disconnected when performing work inside the controller cabinet. Lock and tag shall be considered.

Harnesses between controller and manipulator shall be fixed and protected to avoid tripping and wear.

Wherever possible, power on/off or rebooting the robot controller shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.



Use a CARBON DIOXIDE (CO₂) extinguisher in the event of a fire in the robot.

Safety devices

The integrator is responsible for that the safety devices necessary to protect people working with the robot system are designed and installed correctly.

When integrating the robot with external devices to a robot system:

- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that emergency stop functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.
- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that safety functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.

Other hazards

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

The risk assessment should also consider other hazards arising from the application, such as, but not limited to:

- Water
- · Compressed air
- Hydraulics

End-effector hazards require particular attention for applications which involve close human collaboration with the robot.

33

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning *Continued*

Pneumatic or hydraulic related hazards

Note

The pressure in the complete pneumatic or hydraulic systems must be released before service and maintenance.

All components in the robot system that remain pressurized after switching off the power to the robot must be marked with clearly visible drain facilities and a warning sign that indicates the hazard of stored energy.

Loss of pressure in the robot system may cause parts or objects to drop.

Dump valves should be used in case of emergency.

Shot bolts should be used to prevent tools, etc., from falling due to gravity.

All pipes, hoses, and connections have to be inspected regularly for leaks and damage. Damage must be repaired immediately.

Verify the safety functions

Before the robot system is put into operation, verify that the safety functions are working as intended and that any remaining hazards identified in the risk assessment are mitigated to an acceptable level.

1.5 Safety during operation

Automatic operation

Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed, before changing mode to automatic and initiating automatic operation.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

General	
	Corrective maintenance must only be carried out by personnel trained on the robot.
	Maintenance or repair must be done with all electrical, pneumatic, and hydraulic power switched off, that is, no remaining hazards.
	Hazards due to stored mechanical energy in the manipulator for the purpose of counterbalancing axes must be considered before maintenance or repair.
	Never use the robot as a ladder, which means, do not climb on the controller, manipulator, including motors, or other parts. There are hazards of slipping and falling. The robot might be damaged.
	Make sure that there are no tools, loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after maintenance or repair work.
	When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.
Hot surfaces	

Surfaces can be hot after running the robot, and touching these may result in burns. Allow the surfaces to cool down before maintenance or repair.

Allergic reaction

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reac-tion.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are al- ways worn.
Allergic reaction		

Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease)

When handling oil, grease, or other chemical substances the safety information of the respective manufacturer must be observed.

Note

Take special care when handling hot lubricants.

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
	Changing and draining gearbox oil or grease may require hand- ling hot lubricant heated up to 90 °C.	
Hot oil or grease		

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair Continued

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
Allergic reaction	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reac- tion.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are al- ways worn.
Possible pressure build-up in gearbox	When opening the oil or grease plug, there may be pressure present in the gearbox, causing lubricant to spray from the opening.	Open the plug carefully and keep away from the opening. Do not overfill the gearbox when filling.
Do not overfill	Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pres- sure inside the gearbox which in turn may: • damage seals and gas- kets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely.	Make sure not to overfill the gearbox when filling it with oil or grease. After filling, verify that the level is correct.
Specified amount de- pends on drained volume	The specified amount of oil or grease is based on the total volume of the gearbox. When changing the lubricant, the amount refilled may differ from the specified amount, depending on how much has previously been drained from the gearbox.	After filling, verify that the level is correct.

Hazards related to batteries

Under rated conditions, the electrode materials and liquid electrolyte in the batteries are sealed and not exposed to the outside.

There is a hazard in case of abuse (mechanical, thermal, electrical) which leads to the activation of safety valves and/or the rupture of the battery container. As a result under certain circumstances, electrolyte leakage, electrode materials reaction with moisture/water or battery vent/explosion/fire may follow.

Do not short circuit, recharge, puncture, incinerate, crush, immerse, force discharge or expose to temperatures above the declared operating temperature range of the product. Risk of fire or explosion.

Operating temperatures are listed in *Operating conditions, robot on page 56*.

See safety instructions for the batteries in *Material/product safety data sheet - Battery pack (3HAC043118-001)*.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

Continues on next page

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair *Continued*

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation and operation.

1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes

Description

In an emergency situation, the brakes on a robot axis can be released manually by pushing a brake release button.

How to release the brakes is described in the section:

• Manually releasing the brakes on page 74.

The robot may be moved manually on smaller robot models, but larger models may require using an overhead crane or similar equipment.

Increased injury

Before releasing the brakes, make sure that the weight of the manipulator does not result in additional hazards, for example, even more severe injuries on a trapped person.



When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways.

Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.

1.6.3 Brake testing

1.6.3 Brake testing

When to test	
	During operation, the holding brake of each axis normally wears down. A test can be performed to determine whether the brake can still perform its function.
How to test	
	The function of the holding brake of each axis motor may be verified as described below:
	 Run each axis to a position where the combined weight of the manipulator and any load is maximized (maximum static load).
	2 Switch the motor to the MOTORS OFF.
	3 Inspect and verify that the axis maintains its position.
	If the manipulator does not change position as the motors are switched off, then the brake function is adequate.
	Note
	It is recommended to run the service routine <i>BrakeCheck</i> as part of the regular maintenance, see the operating manual for the robot controller.

For robots with the option SafeMove, the *Cyclic Brake Check* routine is recommended. See the manual for SafeMove in *References on page 10*.

1.7 Safety during troubleshooting

General

When troubleshooting requires work with power switched on, special considerations must be taken:

- Safety circuits might be muted or disconnected.
- Electrical parts must be considered as live.
- The manipulator can move unexpectedly at any time.



Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.

A risk assessment must be done to address both robot and robot system specific hazards.



Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

General

See section Decommissioning on page 873.

If the robot is decommissioned for storage, take extra precaution to reset safety devices to delivery status.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

2.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning

General

This chapter contains assembly instructions and information for installing the IRB 1200 at the working site.

See also the product manual for the robot controller.

The installation must be done by qualified installation personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The technical data is detailed in section *Technical data on page 53*.

Safety information

Before any installation work is commenced, all safety information must be observed.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter Safety on page 21 before performing any installation work.



Note

Always connect the IRB 1200 and the robot to protective earth and residual current device (RCD) before connecting to power and starting any installation work.

For more information see:

- Product manual OmniCore C30
- Product manual OmniCore C90XT •
- Product manual OmniCore E10
- Product manual IRC5 •
- Product manual IRC5 Compact •

2.2.1 Extra O-rings

2.2 Unpacking

2.2.1 Extra O-rings

Installation of extra O-rings

For robots with protection class IP67

For robots with protection type Foundry Plus

For robots with protection type Clean Room

For robots with food grade lubrication

For robots with protection type Hygienic

Two extra O-rings are delivered together with the robot and must be fitted to the robot during installation.

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
O-ring	3HAB3772-19	For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubrication
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
		Used to seal between the main power cable and the connector. Robots with manipulator cables routed from the rear of the base:
		x150000243
		Robots with manipulator cables routed from below (option 996-1):
		xx1500000242

2.2.1 Extra O-rings Continued

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
O-ring	3HAB3772-141	For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubrication
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
		Used with manipulator cables routed
		from below
		xx1500000241

A label, as shown in the following, is fitted on the connector to remind the fitting of extra O-ring 3HAB3772-19. The label must be removed before the O-ring and main cable is fitted.

Extra O-ring 3HAB3772-19 (d Accessories) must be fitted .	elivered in
3H	AC079172-001

xx2100001272

Further information

For installation information, see *Orienting and securing the robot on page 77* and *Electrical connections on page 109*.

2.2.2 Protection covers

2.2.2 Protection covers

Protection covers for water and dust proofing

For robots delivered with option 803-2 Ethernet, Parallel, Air (IRC5) For robot delivered with option 3303-2 Ethernet, Parallel, Air (OmniCore)

A dust cap and two protectors are delivered together with the robot and must be well fitted to the connectors in any application requiring water and dust proofing.

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Dust cap	3HEA800897-002	Used to cover unused connectors for water and dust proofing. Replace if damaged.
M12 protector	3HAC047543-001	Used with option 803-2 (IRC5) or option 3303-2 (OmniCore).
		Used to cover unused connectors for water and dust proofing. Replace if damaged.
RJ 45 protector	3HAC047539-001	Used with option 803-2 (IRC5) or option 3303-2 (OmniCore).
		Used to cover unused connectors for water and dust proofing. Replace if damaged.

Protection covers for Foundry Plus robots

For robots with protection type Foundry Plus

Extra protection covers, sealing and plugs are delivered together with Foundry Plus robots and must be fitted to the robot during installation.

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Protection bracket for CP/CS connectors	3HAC058350-001	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Protection cover for axis- 6 turning disk	3HAC044666-001	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
T40 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-012	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Protection plug for lifting holes	3HAC4836-24	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.

2.2.3 Transportation bracket

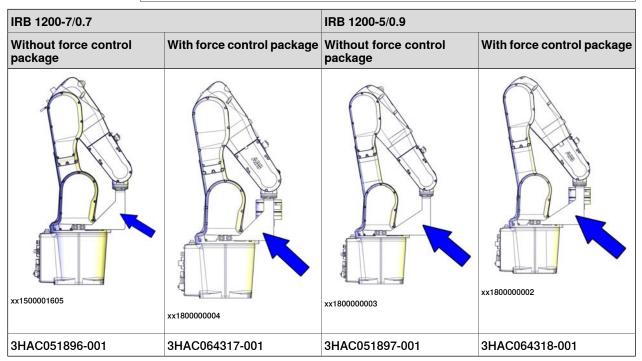
2.2.3 Transportation bracket

Location of the transportation bracket

A transportation bracket is installed and delivered together with the robot for securing the robot position during shipping and transport. The transportation bracket must be removed before fitting the lifting accessory to the robot during the lifting of the robot to the installation site.



For robots delivered with option 636-1 Force Control Package (IRC5) For robot delivered with option 3038-1 Force Control Interface (OmniCore) The transportation bracket is installed on the force sensor.



Removing the transportation bracket

Use this procedure to remove the bracket.



Note

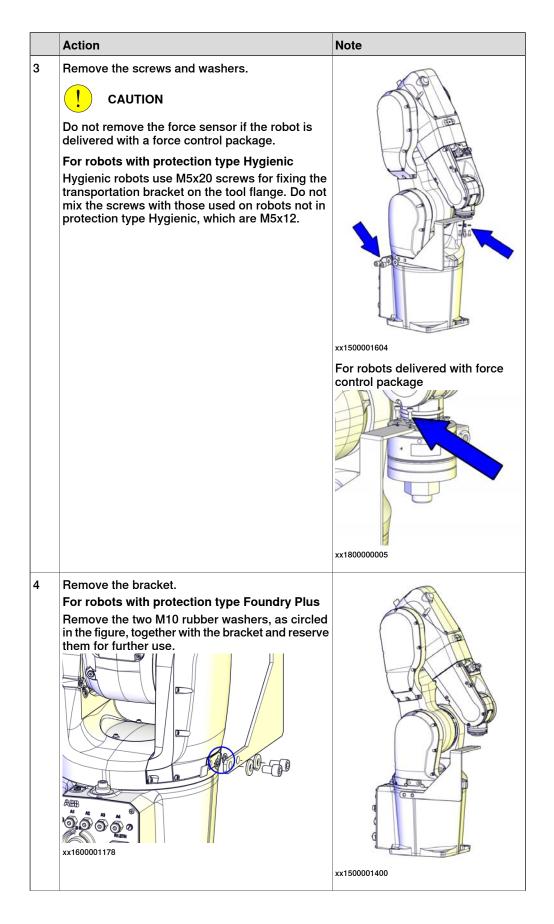
The bracket must be kept for reuse after removal. Once robot shipping and transportation are required, the transportation bracket has to be reinstalled for securing the robot position.

47

2.2.3 Transportation bracket *Continued*

	Action	Note	
1	Move the robot to an appropriate position.	Taking IRB 1200-5/0.9 as an ex- ample	
	The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation!	xx1500001399	×
		A B	
		IRB 1200 all vari- ants (not in protec- tion type Hygienic)	
		IRB 1200-7/0.7 (in protection type Hy- gienic) 25.66	°
		IRB 1200-5/0.9 (in protection type Hy-gienic)	°
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic It is important not to rub against the paint of the robot while performing any service work on the robot.		

2.2.3 Transportation bracket *Continued*



2.2.3 Transportation bracket *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Make sure the swing sealing plug is intact and the sealant around fully covers the joint. If not, replace the swing sealing plug and seal the joint. See <i>Swing sealing plug for Clean Room,</i> <i>food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots on</i> <i>page 172.</i> After the replacement, wipe clean.	Swing sealing plug: 3HAC053687- 001
		xx1600000205
6	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Fit protection plugs to the lifting holes.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24

2.2.4 Pre-installation procedure

2.2.4 Pre-installation procedure

Introduction

This section is intended for use when unpacking and installing the robot for the first time. It also contains information useful during later re-installation of the robot.

Prerequisites for installation personnel

Installation personnel working with an ABB product must:

- be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/maintenance/repair work
- conform to all national and local codes.

Risk assessment for special environments

During the planning of applications using robots with protection type Hygienic, it is recommended to perform an initial hygienic risk assessment according to EN ISO 14159 and SS-EN 1672-2. The risk assessment should fully involve considerations from production process experts, risk assessment experts and any personnel who will work with the robots.

If performing a risk assessment according to EN ISO 14159, it shall be assumed that the robot conforms to Level 1 as defined in EN ISO 14159 Annex A.

Following risks (but not limited to) should be assessed:

- Leakage of oil and grease
- Wearing of gaskets and sealings
- · Loss of plugs and screws
- · Tiny clearances and hard-to-reach areas of the robot
- · Flakes of paint
- · Uncoated areas on the robot
- · Residuals of products and/or cleaning and disinfecting agents
- Improper installation of customer tools
- Misuse of cleaning and disinfecting agents
- · Improper cleaning and disinfecting practices

Checking the pre-requisites for installation

	Action	
1	Make a visual inspection of the packaging and make sure that nothing is damaged.	
2	Remove the packaging.	
3	B Check for any visible transport damage.	
	Note	
	Stop unpacking and contact ABB if transport damages are found.	
4	Clean the unit with a lint-free cloth, if necessary.	

2.2.4 Pre-installation procedure *Continued*

	Action
5	Make sure that the lifting accessory used (if required) is suitable to handle the weight of the robot as specified in: <i>Weight, robot on page 53</i>
6	If the robot is not installed directly, it must be stored as described in: <i>Storage condi-</i> <i>tions, robot on page 56</i>
7	Make sure that the expected operating environment of the robot conforms to the specifications as described in: <i>Operating conditions, robot on page 56</i>
8	 Before taking the robot to its installation site, make sure that the site conforms to: Loads on foundation, robot on page 54
	Protection classes, robot on page 56
	Requirements, foundation on page 55
9	Before moving the robot, please observe the stability of the robot: <i>Risk of tipping/stability on page 65</i>
10	When these prerequisites are met, the robot can be taken to its installation site as described in section: <i>On-site installation on page 68</i>
11	Install required equipment, if any. Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots on page 97

2.2.5 Technical data

2.2.5 Technical data

Weight, robot

The table shows the weight of the robot.

Robot model	Weight
IRB 1200	IRB 1200-5/0.9: 54 kg
	IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg
	IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg



The weight does not include tools and other equipment fitted on the robot.

Mounting positions

The table shows valid mounting options for the manipulator.

Mounting option	Installation angle	Note
Floor mounted	Any angle	
Wall mounted	Any angle	
Suspended	Any angle	
Tilted	Any angle	Contact ABB for further in- formation about acceptable loads.



The actual mounting angle must always be configured in the system parameters, otherwise the performance and lifetime is affected. See *Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot on page 81*.

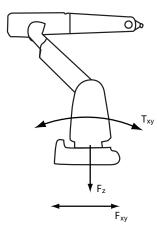
53

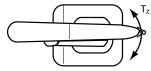
2.2.5 Technical data *Continued*

Loads on foundation, robot

The illustration shows the directions of the robots stress forces.

The directions are valid for all floor mounted, suspended and inverted robots.





xx1100000521

F _{xy}	Force in any direction in the XY plane
Fz	Force in the Z plane
T _{xy}	Bending torque in any direction in the XY plane
Tz	Bending torque in the Z plane

The table shows the various forces and torques working on the robot during different kinds of operation.



These forces and torques are extreme values that are rarely encountered during operation. The values also never reach their maximum at the same time!



The robot installation is restricted to the mounting options given in following load table(s).

Floor mounted

Force	Endurance load (in operation)	Max. load (emergency stop)
Force xy	±910 N	±1620 N
Force z	-550 ±980 N	-550 ±1610 N
Torque xy	±570 Nm	±1550 Nm
Torque z	±280 Nm	±580 Nm

Continues on next page

2.2.5 Technical data Continued

Wall mounted

Force	Endurance load (in operation)	Max. load (emergency stop)
Force xy	±1210 N	±1940 N
Force z	0 ±900 N	0 ±1340 N
Torque xy	±700 Nm	±1650 Nm
Torque z	±300 Nm	±610 Nm

Suspended

Force	Endurance load (in operation)	Max. load (emergency stop)
Force xy	±910 N	±1620 N
Force z	+550 ±980 N	+550 ±1610 N
Torque xy	±570 Nm	±1550 Nm
Torque z	±280 Nm	±580 Nm

Requirements, foundation

The table shows the requirements for the foundation where the weight of the installed robot is included:

Requirement	Value	Note
Flatness of foundation surface	0.1/500 mm	Flat foundations give better repeatability of the resolver calibration compared to original settings on delivery from ABB.
		The value for levelness aims at the circumstance of the anchoring points in the robot base.
		In order to compensate for an uneven surface, the robot can be recalibrated during installation. If resolver/encoder calibration is changed this will influence the absolute accuracy.
Minimum resonance frequency	22 Hz	The value is recommended for optimal perform- ance.
	Note	Due to foundation stiffness, consider robot mass including equipment. ⁱ
	It may affect the manipulator life- time to have a lower resonance frequency than recommended.	For information about compensating for founda- tion flexibility, see the application manual of the controller software, section <i>Motion Process</i> <i>Mode</i> .
Minimum foundation material yield strength	150 MPa	

The minimum resonance frequency given should be interpreted as the frequency of the robot mass/inertia, robot assumed stiff, when a foundation translational/torsional elasticity is added, i.e., the stiffness of the pedestal where the robot is mounted. The minimum resonance frequency should not be interpreted as the resonance frequency of the building, floor etc. For example, if the equivalent mass of the floor is very high, it will not affect robot movement, even if the frequency is well below the stated frequency. The robot should be mounted as rigid as possibly to the floor.

Disturbances from other machinery will affect the robot and the tool accuracy. The robot has resonance frequencies in the region 10 - 20 Hz and disturbances in this region will be amplified, although somewhat damped by the servo control. This might be a problem, depending on the requirements from the applications. If this is a problem, the robot needs to be isolated from the environment.

i

2.2.5 Technical data Continued



For robots with protection type Hygienic, the foundation where the robot is installed and the robot base must be far away from the food contact areas.

Storage conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed storage conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	-25ºC
Maximum ambient temperature	+55ºC
Maximum ambient temperature (less than 24 hrs)	+70ºC
Maximum ambient humidity	95% at constant temperature (gaseous only)

Operating conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed operating conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	+5ºC ⁱ
Maximum ambient temperature	+45ºC
Maximum ambient temperature for robots with food grade lubrication for robots in protection type Hygienic	+35ºC ⁱⁱ
Maximum ambient humidity	95% at constant temperature

i At low environmental temperature < 10°C is, as with any other machine, a warm-up phase recommended to be run with the robot. Otherwise there is a risk that the robot stops or run with lower performance due to temperature dependent oil and grease viscosity.

For robots with food grade lubrication
 For robots with protection type Hygienic
 If environment temperature > 35°C, contact ABB for further information.

Protection classes, robot

The table shows the available protection types of the robot, with the corresponding protection class.

Protection type	Protection class ⁱ
Manipulator, protection type Standard	IP40
	IP67 (option 287-10, with IRC5 controllers)
	IP67 (option 3350-670, with Omni- Core controllers)
Manipulator, protection type Foundry Plus	IP67 (option 287-3)
	IP67 (option 3352-10, with Omni- Core controllers)
Manipulator, protection type Clean Room	Cleanroom (option 287-1)
	ISO Class 3 (option 3351-3, with OmniCore controllers)

2.2.5 Technical data Continued

Protection type	Protection class ⁱ
Manipulator, protection type Hygienic	IP67 IP69K (max.30bar) on axis 6 flange
According to IEC 60529.	

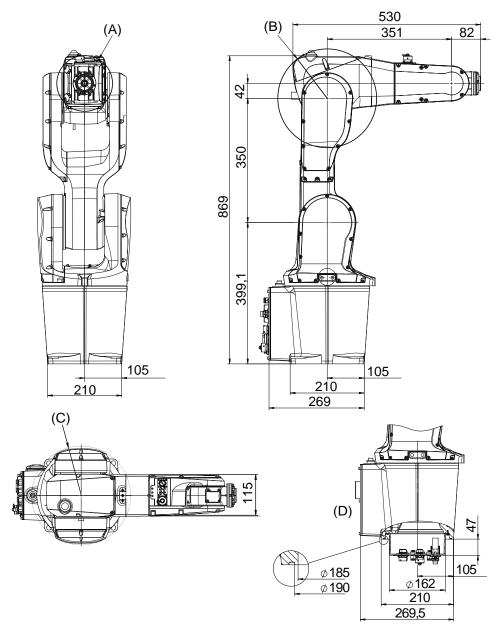
According to IEC 60529.

2.2.6 Dimensions

2.2.6 Dimensions

Dimensions IRB 1200-7/0.7

For robots in protection type IP67, Foundry Plus, Clean Room and food grade lubrication robots



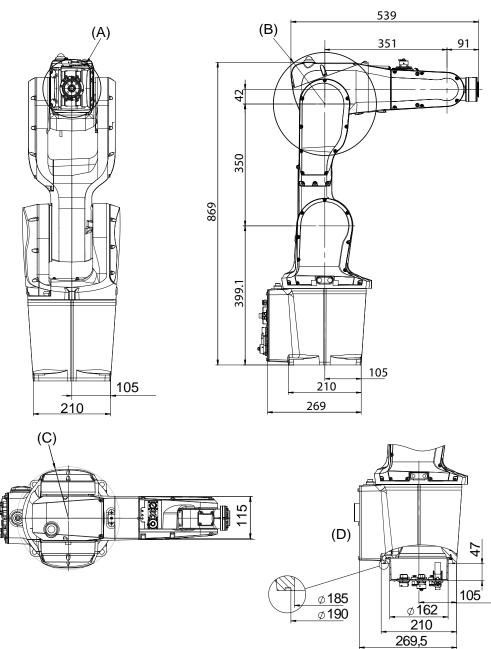
xx1300000366

Position	Description
Α	Minimum turning radius axis 4 R=79 mm
В	Minimum turning radius axis 3 R=139 mm
С	Minimum turning radius axis 1 R=138 mm
D	Valid for option Robot cabling routing, 966-1 From below3309-1 From below

Continues on next page

2.2.6 Dimensions Continued

For robots in protection type Hygienic

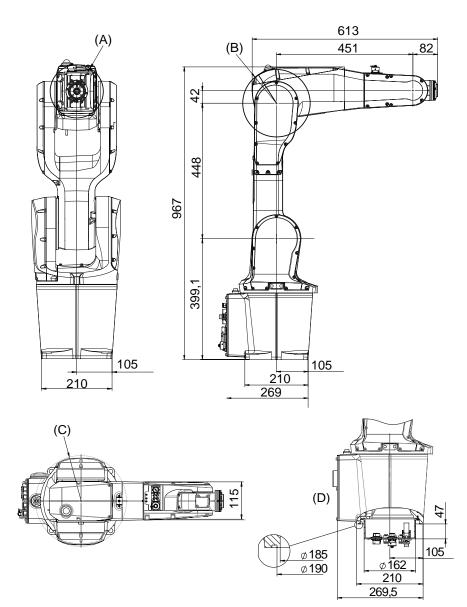


Position	Description
A	Minimum turning radius axis 4 R=79 mm
в	Minimum turning radius axis 3 R=139 mm
С	Minimum turning radius axis 1 R=138 mm
D	Valid for option Robot cabling routing, 966-1 From below3309-1 From below

2.2.6 Dimensions *Continued*

Dimensions IRB 1200-5/0.9

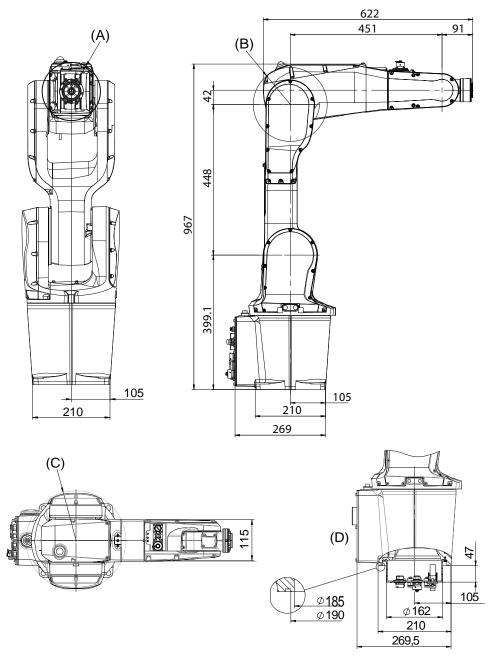
For robots in protection type IP67, Foundry Plus, Clean Room and food grade lubrication robots



Pos	Description
Α	Minimum turning radius axis 4 R=79 mm
В	Minimum turning radius axis 3 R=111 mm
С	Minimum turning radius axis 1 R=138 mm
D	Valid for option Robot cabling routing, 966-1 From below3309-1 From below

2.2.6 Dimensions Continued

For robots in protection type Hygienic



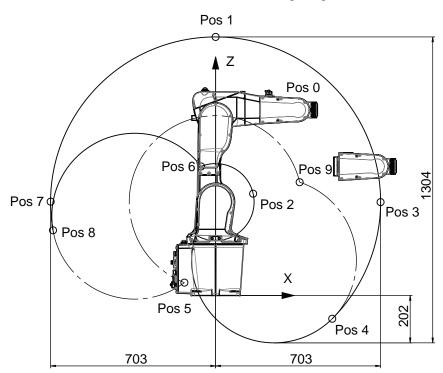
Position	Description
Α	Minimum turning radius axis 4 R=79 mm
В	Minimum turning radius axis 3 R=139 mm
С	Minimum turning radius axis 1 R=138 mm
D	Valid for option Robot cabling routing, 966-1 From below3309-1 From below

2.2.7 Working range

2.2.7 Working range

Illustration, working range IRB 1200-7/0.7

IRB 1200-7/0.7 Working range, positions at wrist center and angle of axes 2 and 3 The illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.

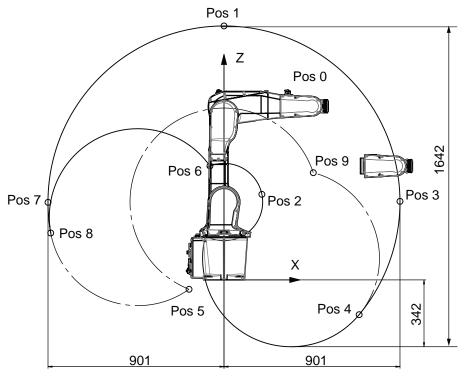


Position in the	Positions at wrist center (mm)		Angle (degrees)		
figure	X	Z	Axis 2	Axis 3	
Pos0	351	791	0º	0º	
Pos1	0	1102	0º	-83º	
Pos2	160	434	0º	+70º	
Pos3	703	398	+90º	-83º	
Pos4	497	-99	+135º	-83º	
Pos5	-133	55	-100º	-200º	
Pos6	-62	550	-100º	+70º	
Pos7	-703	400	-90º	-83º	
Pos8	-693	278	-100º	-83º	
Pos9	358	488	+135°	-200°	

2.2.7 Working range Continued

Illustration, working range IRB 1200-5/0.9

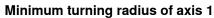
IRB 1200-5/0.9 Working range, positions at wrist center and angle of axes 2 and 3 The illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.

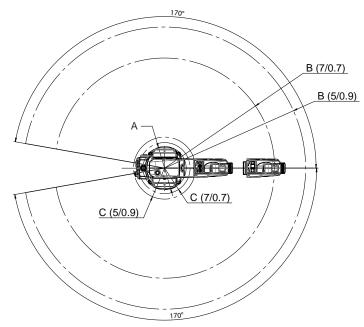


xx1300000387	

Position in the	Positions at wris	vrist center (mm)	Angle (degrees)		
figure	x	z	Axis 2	Axis 3	
Pos0	451	889	0º	0º	
Pos1	0	1300	0º	-85º	
Pos2	194	438	0º	+70º	
Pos3	901	402	+90º	-85º	
Pos4	692	-178	+130º	-85º	
Pos5	-179	-48	-100º	-200º	
Pos6	-72	583	-100º	+70º	
Pos7	-901	397	-90º	-85º	
Pos8	-887	240	-100º	-85º	
Pos9	458	549	+130°	-200°	

2.2.7 Working range Continued





xx1400000681

i

Robot variant	Radius A	Radius B	Radius C
IRB 1200-5/0.9	138 mm ⁱ	901 mm	198 mm
IRB 1200-7/0.7	138 mm ⁱ	703 mm	163 mm
i Maximum turning radius of axis 1.			

Maximum turning radius of axis 1.

Working range

Axis	Type of motion	IRB 1200-7/0.7	IRB 1200-5/0.9
Axis 1	Rotation motion	+170° to -170°	+170° to -170°
Axis 2	Arm motion	+135° to -100°	+130° to -100°
Axis 3	Arm motion	+70° to -200°	+70° to -200°
Axis 4	Wrist motion	+270° to -270°	+270° to -270°
Axis 5	Bend motion	±130° (not Hygienic robots) ±128° (Hygienic robots)	±130° (not Hygienic robots) ±128° (Hygienic robots)
Axis 6	Turn motion	Default: +400° to -400° Maximum revolution: ±242 ⁱ	Default: +400° to -400° Maximum revolution: ±242 ^{<i>i</i>}

The default working range for axis 6 can be extended by changing parameter values in the software. Option Independent axis can be used for resetting the revolution counter after the axis has been rotated (no need for "rewinding" the axis).

2.2.8 Risk of tipping/stability

2.2.8 Risk of tipping/stability

Risk of tipping

If the robot is not fastened to the foundation while moving the arm, the robot is not stable in the whole working area. Moving the arm will displace the center of gravity, which may cause the robot to tip over.

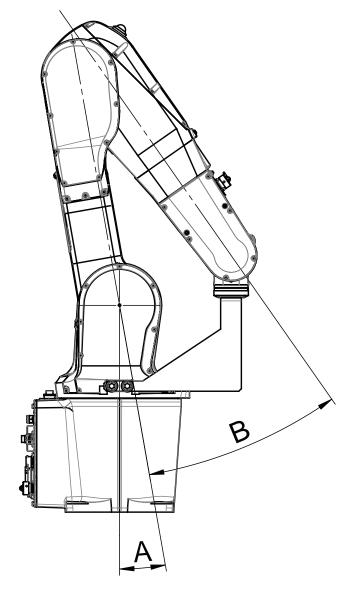
The transportation position is the most stable position.

Do not change the robot position before securing it to the foundation!

Transportation position

This figure shows the robot in its transportation position.

Taking IRB 1200-5/0.9 as an example



2.2.8 Risk of tipping/stability Continued

	Α	В
IRB 1200 all variants (not in protection type Hygienic)	10°	25°
IRB 1200-7/0.7 (in protection type Hygienic)	11.95°	25.66°
IRB 1200-5/0.9 (in protection type Hygienic)	11.77°	25.48°



Note

The robot might be positioned in a different position at delivery, due to actual configurations and options (for example DressPack).

Transportation bracket

A transportation bracket is installed and delivered together with the robot for securing the robot position during transportation. The transportation bracket must be removed before fitting the lifting accessory to the robot during the lifting of the robot to the installation site.

For details, see Transportation bracket on page 47.



The robot will be mechanically unstable if not properly secured to the foundation.

2.2.9 The unit is sensitive to ESD

2.2.9 The unit is sensitive to ESD

Description	
	ESD (electrostatic discharge) is the transfer of electrical static charge between two bodies at different potentials, either through direct contact or through an induced electrical field. When handling parts or their containers, personnel not grounded may potentially transfer high static charges. This discharge may destroy sensitive electronics.
Safe handling	
	Use one of the following alternatives:
	Use a wrist strap.
	Wrist straps must be tested frequently to ensure that they are not damaged and are operating correctly.
	Use an ESD protective floor mat.
	The mat must be grounded through a current-limiting resistor.
	Use a dissipative table mat.
	The mat should provide a controlled discharge of static voltages and must be grounded.

2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings

2.3 On-site installation

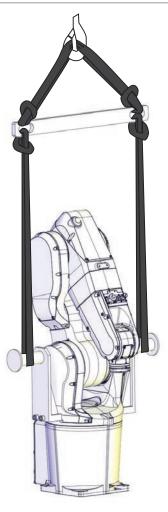
2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings

Attaching the roundslings



A transportation bracket is installed and delivered together with the robot for securing the robot position during shipping and transport. The transportation bracket must be removed before fitting the lifting accessory to the robot during the lifting of the robot to the installation site.

For details, see *Transportation bracket on page* 47.



xx1400000501

Required equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Overhead crane	-	

2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings *Continued*

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Roundsling, 0.6 m	-	2 pcs. Length: 0.6 m. Lifting capacity: 60 kg.
Roundsling, 1.5 m	-	2 pcs. Length: 1.5 m. Lifting capacity: 60 kg.
Lifting accessory, robot	3HAC049711-001	Includes lifting accessories, lifting beam and screws.

Lifting and turning the robot with roundslings

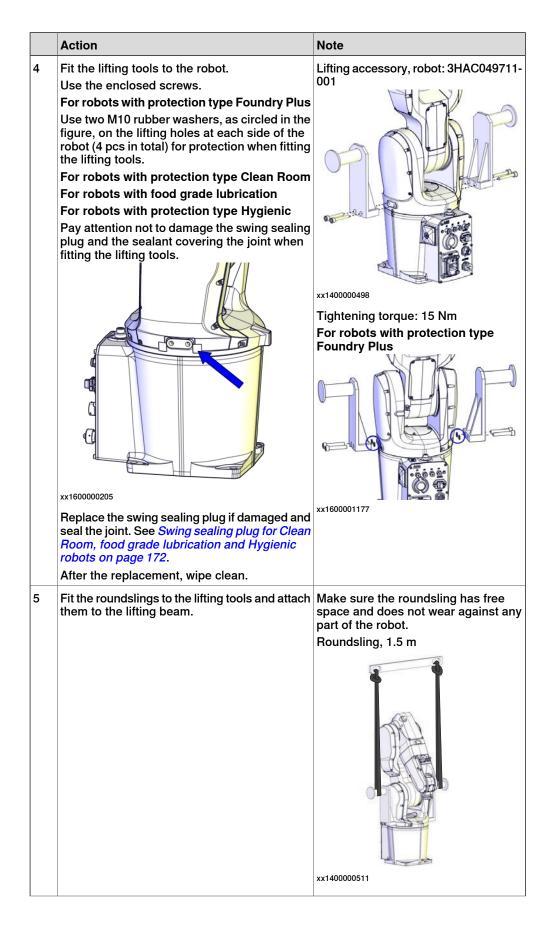
Use this procedure to lift the robot with roundslings.

	Action	Note		
1	Action Move the robot to an appropriate lifting posi- tion. WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation!	Taking IRB 1200-5/0.9 as an exam		example
		xx1500001399	A	В
		IRB 1200 all variants (not in protection type Hygienic)	10°	25°
		IRB 1200-7/0.7 (in protection type Hy-gienic)	11.95°	25.66°
		IRB 1200-5/0.9 (in protection type Hy- gienic)	11.77°	25.48°

2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings *Continued*

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	It is important not to rub against the paint of the robot while performing any service work on the robot.	
3	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove the protection plugs in lifting holes.	000
		xx1600001147

2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings Continued



2.3.1 Lifting robot with roundslings *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Fit the roundslings to the lifting beam and to the overhead crane.	Roundsling, 0.6 m
7	CAUTION The IRB 1200 robot weighs . IRB 1200-5/0.9: 54 kg IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized ac- cordingly!	
8	WARNING Personnel must not, under any circumstances, be present under the suspended load!	
9	Raise the overhead crane to lift the robot.	
10	If the manipulator should be mounted on a wall, or in an suspended position the manipulator can now be tilted slowly by hand.	G
		xx1600000005

2.3.2 Lifting and turning a suspended mounted robot

Introduction

How to lift and turn the robot to a suspended position using the turning accessory is described in the lifting instruction delivered with the turning accessory. Article numbers for the accessory and the instruction is specified in *Special tools on page 899*. Any additional equipment required is specified in the instruction for the lifting accessory. Contact ABB for more information.

How to lift and turn the robot into position for **wall** position: Contact ABB for more information.

How to lift and turn the robot into position for **tilted** position: Contact ABB for more information.

2.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes

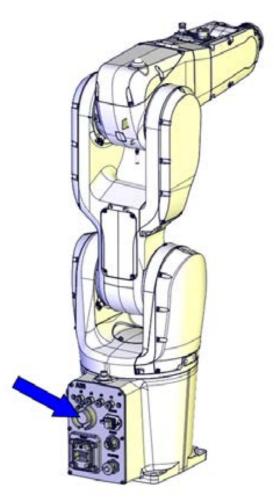
2.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes

Introduction to manually releasing the brakes

This section describes how to release the holding brakes for the motors of each axis.

Location of brake release unit

The internal brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx140000030

Continues on next page

2.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes Continued

Releasing the brakes

This procedure details how to release the holding brakes when the robot is equipped with an internal brake release unit.

	Action	Note
1	The internal brake release unit is equipped with a button for controlling the axes brakes. If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section <i>Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 75</i> .	x14000030
2	DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpec- ted ways! Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	
3	Release the holding brake on all robot axes by pressing the button on the internal brake release unit.	
	The brake will function again as soon as the button is released.	

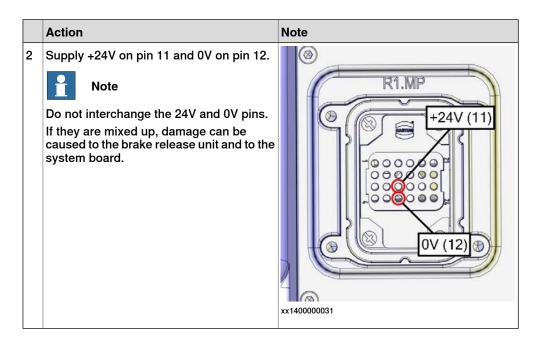
Supplying power to connector R1.MP

If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to connector R1.MP on the robot in order to enable the brake release buttons.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Incorrect connections, such as supplying power to the wrong pin, may cause all brakes to be released simultaneously!	

75

2.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes *Continued*



2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot

2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot

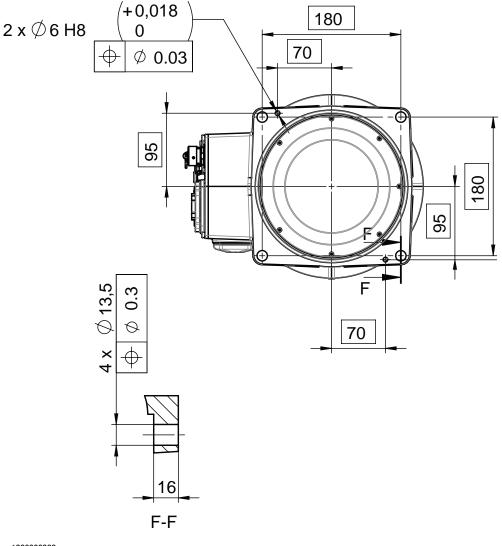
Introduction

This section details how to orient and secure the robot to the foundation or base plate in order to run the robot safely. The requirements made on the foundation are shown in sections:

- Loads on foundation, robot on page 54
- Requirements, foundation on page 55.

Hole configuration, base

The illustration shows the hole configuration used when securing the robot.



2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot *Continued*

Specification, attachment screws and pins

The table specifies the type of securing screws and washers to be used to secure the robot directly to the foundation. It also specifies the type of pins to be used.

Suitable screws	M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation)
Quantity	4 pcs
Quality	8.8
Suitable washer	13 x 20 x 2, steel hardness class 300HV
Guide pins	2 pcs, D6x20, ISO 2338 - 6m6x20 - A1
Tightening torque	55 Nm ± 5 Nm
Length of thread engagement	Minimum 17 mm for ground with material yield strength 150 MPa
Level surface requirements	0.2
	xx090000643

Installation of extra O-ring

For robots with protection class IP67

For robots with protection type FoundryPlus

For robots with protection type Clean Room

For robots with food grade lubrication

For robots with protection type Hygienic

Manipulator cables routed from below

The O-ring specified below is delivered together with the robot and must be installed to the bottom of the base during installation.

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
O-ring	3HAB3772-141	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Used with manipulator cables routed from below

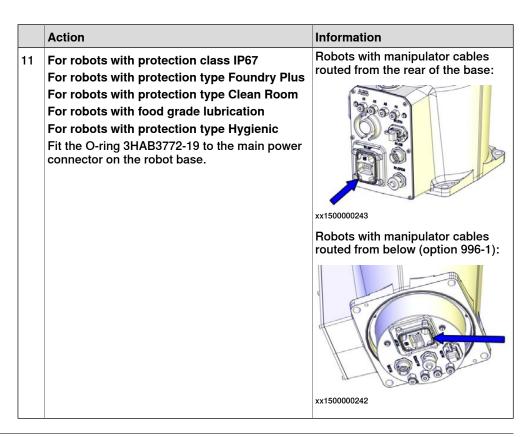
2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot *Continued*

Orienting and securing the robot

Use this procedure to orient and secure the robot.

	Action	Information
1	Make sure the installation site for the robot con- forms to the specifications in section: • Pre-installation procedure on page 51.	
2	Prepare the installation site with attachment holes.	 The hole configuration of the base is shown in the figure in: Hole configuration, base on page 77
3		
	The robot weighs . All lifting equipment must be sized accordingly! IRB 1200-5/0.9: 54 kg IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg	
4		
	When the robot is put down after being lifted or transported, there is a risk of it tipping, if not properly secured.	
5	Lift the robot to its installation site.	 How to lift the robot is described in section: Lifting robot with roundslings on page 68
6	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Cabling routed from below Fit the O-ring 3HAB3772-141 to underneath the robot base.	xx150000241
7	Fit two <i>pins</i> to the holes in the base.	2 pcs, D6x20, ISO 2338 - 6m6x20 - A1
8	Guide the robot gently, using the attachment screws while lowering it into its mounting position.	Make sure the robot base is cor- rectly fitted onto the pins.
9	Fit the <i>securing screws</i> and <i>washers</i> in the attach- ment holes of the base.	Screws: M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8
10	Tighten the bolts in a criss-cross pattern to en- sure that the base is not distorted.	Tightening torque: 55 Nm ± 5 Nm
	1	

2.3.4 Orienting and securing the robot *Continued*



Securing robot on a mounting plate

When bolting a mounting plate or frame to a concrete floor, follow the general instructions for expansion-shell bolts.

Screw joints must be able to withstand the stress loads defined in section *Loads on foundation, robot on page 54.*

2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot

2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot

General

The robot is configured for mounting parallel to the floor, without tilting, on delivery. If the robot is mounted in any other angle than 0° , then the system parameters that describe the mounting angle (how the robot is oriented relative to the gravity) must be re-defined.



With inverted installation, make sure that the gantry or corresponding structure is rigid enough to prevent unacceptable vibrations and deflections, so that optimum performance can be achieved.



Note

The mounting positions are described in *Mounting positions on page 53*, and the requirements on the foundation are described in *Requirements, foundation on page 55*.

System parameters



The mounting angle must be configured correctly in the system parameters so that the robot system can control the movements in the best possible way. An incorrect definition of the mounting angle will result in:

- · Overloading the mechanical structure.
- · Lower path performance and path accuracy.
- Some functions will not work properly, for example *Load Identification* and *Collision detection*.

Gravity Beta

If the robot is mounted upside down or on a wall (rotated around the y-axis), then the robot base frame and the system parameter *Gravity Beta* must be redefined. *Gravity Beta* should then be π (+3.141593) if the robot is mounted upside down (suspended), or $\pm \pi/2$ (± 1.570796) if mounted on a wall.

The *Gravity Beta* is a positive rotation direction around the y-axis in the base coordinate system. The value is set in radians.

Gravity Alpha

If the robot is mounted on a wall (rotated around the x-axis), then the robot base frame and the system parameter *Gravity Alpha* must be redefined. The value of *Gravity Alpha* should then be $\pm \pi/2$ (± 1.570796).

2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot *Continued*

The *Gravity Alpha* is a positive rotation direction around the x-axis in the base coordinate system. The value is set in radians.

Note

The system parameter *Gravity Alpha* is not supported for all robot types. It is not supported for IRB 140, IRB 1410, IRB 1600ID, IRB 2400, IRB 4400, IRB 6400R, IRB 6400 (except for IRB 6400 200/2.5 and IRB 6400 200/2.8), IRB 6600, IRB 6650, IRB 6650S and IRB 7600 (except for IRB 7600 325/3.1).

If the robot does not support *Gravity Alpha*, then use *Gravity Beta* along with the recalibration of axis 1 to define the rotation of the robot around the x-axis.



The parameter is supported for all robots on track when the system parameter 7 axes high performance motion is set, see Technical reference manual - System parameters.

Gamma Rotation

Gamma Rotation defines the orientation of the robot foot on the travel carriage (track motion).

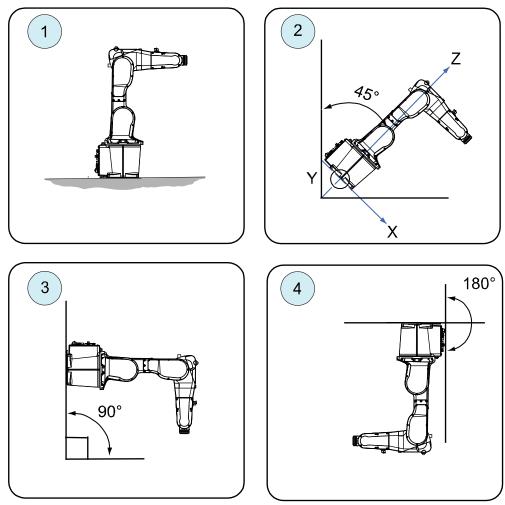
Mounting angles and values

The parameter *Gravity Beta* (or *Gravity Alpha*) specifies the mounting angle of the robot in radians. It is calculated in the following way.

Gravity Beta = $A^{\circ} \times 3.141593/180 = B$ radians, where A is the mounting angle in degrees and B is the mounting angle in radians.

Example of position	Mounting angle (A°)	Gravity Beta
Floor mounted	0°	0.000000 (Default)
Tilted mounting	45°	0.785398
Wall mounting	90°	1.570796
Suspended mounting	180°	3.141593

^{2.3.5} Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot *Continued*



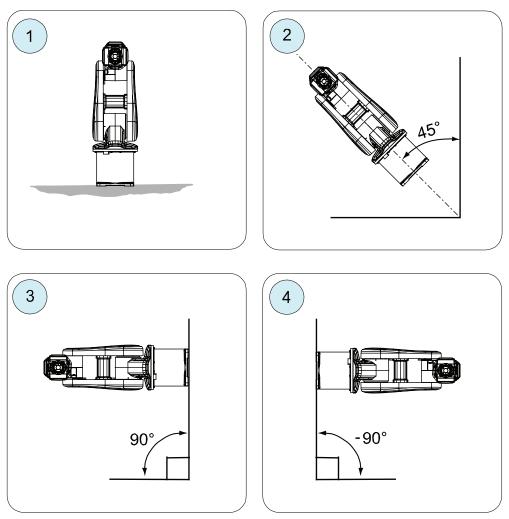
Examples of mounting angles tilted around the Y axis (Gravity Beta)

Pos 1	Floor mounted
Pos 2	Mounting angle 45° (Tilted)
Pos 3	Mounting angle 90° (Wall)
Pos 4	Mounting angle 180° (Suspended)

2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot Continued

Examples of mounting angles tilted around the X axis (Gravity Alpha)

The following illustration shows the IRB 120, but the same principle applies for all robots.



xx1500000532

Pos	Mounting angle	Gravity Alpha
1	0° (Floor mounted)	0
2	45° (Tilted)	0.785398
3	90° (Wall)	1.570796
4	-90° (Wall)	-1.570796



Note

For suspended robots (180°), it is recommended to use Gravity Beta instead of Gravity Alpha.

2.3.5 Setting the system parameters for a suspended or tilted robot Continued

Defining the parameter in RobotWare

The value of the system parameters that define the mounting angle must be redefined when changing the mounting angle of the robot. The parameters belong to the type *Robot*, in the topic *Motion*.

How to calculate a new value is detailed in *Mounting angles and values on page 82*.

The system parameters are described in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

The system parameters are configured in RobotStudio or on the FlexPendant.

2.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

2.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

General

Any loads mounted on the robot must be defined correctly and carefully (with regard to the position of center of gravity and mass moments of inertia) in order to avoid jolting movements and overloading motors, gears and structure.



Incorrectly defined loads may result in operational stops or major damage to the robot.

References

Load diagrams, permitted extra loads (equipment) and their positions are specified in the product specification. The loads must be defined in the software.

- Operating manual IRC5 with FlexPendant
- Operating manual OmniCore

Stopping time and braking distances

The performance of the motor brake depends on if there are any loads attached to the robot. For more information, see product specification listed in *References* on page 10.

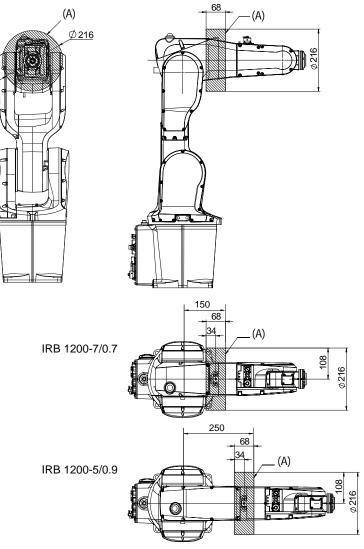
2.3.7.1 Introduction to fitting of equipment

2.3.7 Fitting of equipment on the robot

2.3.7.1 Introduction to fitting of equipment

General

Extra loads can be mounted on to the upper arm. Definitions of load area and permitted load are shown in figure below. The center of gravity of the extra load shall be within the marked load areas. The robot is supplied with holes for fitting of extra equipment. (See *Holes for fitting extra equipment on page 88*).

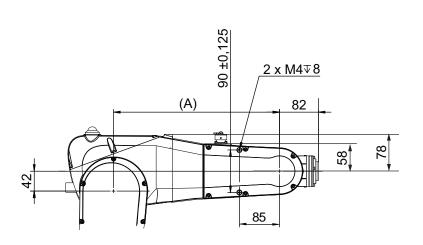


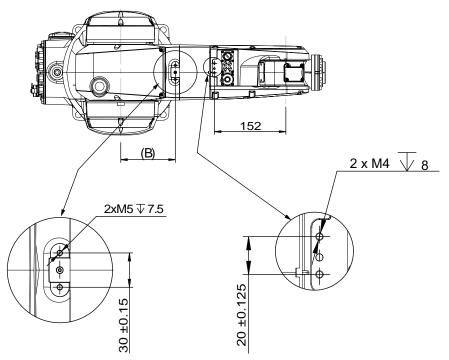
Load area (A)	Max load
IRB 1200-5/0.9	0.3 kg
IRB 1200-7/0.7	

2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment

2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment

Upper arm





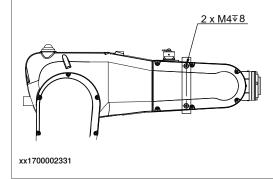
Pos	Description
Α	IRB 1200-5/0.9 = 451 mm, IRB 1200-7/0.7 = 351 mm
В	IRB 1200-5/0.9 = 216 mm, IRB 1200-7/0.7 = 116 mm

2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment Continued



Note

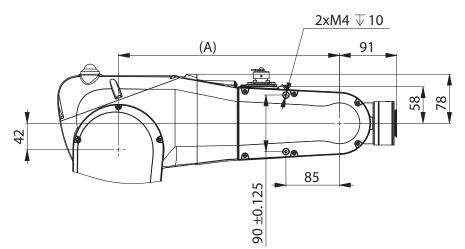
The two M4 thread holes shown in the following figure are used for fitting the cable harness or air hoses of the tools rather than fitting extra equipment.

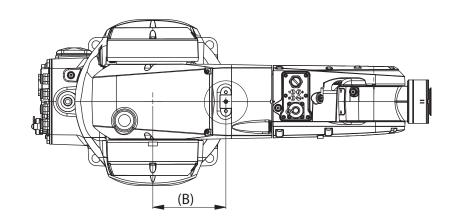


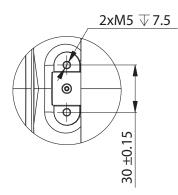
89

2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment *Continued*

Upper arm for Hygienic robots







xx2100001279

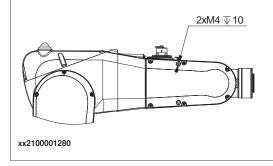
Pos	Description
Α	IRB 1200-5/0.9 = 451 mm, IRB 1200-7/0.7 = 351 mm
В	IRB 1200-5/0.9 = 216 mm, IRB 1200-7/0.7 = 116 mm

Continues on next page

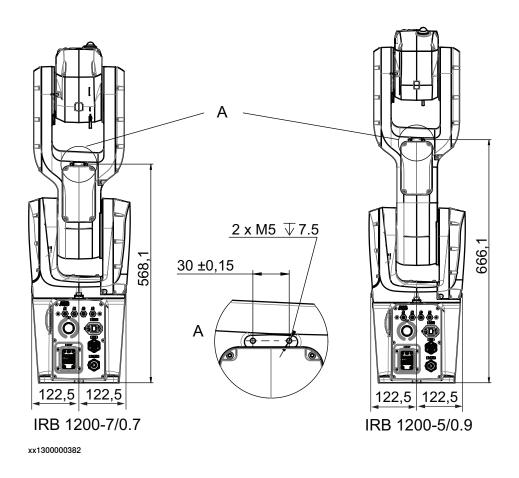
2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment *Continued*



The two M4 thread holes shown in the following figure are used for fitting the cable harness or air hoses of the tools rather than fitting extra equipment.

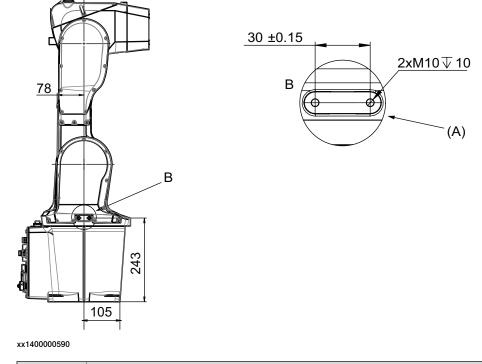


Lower arm



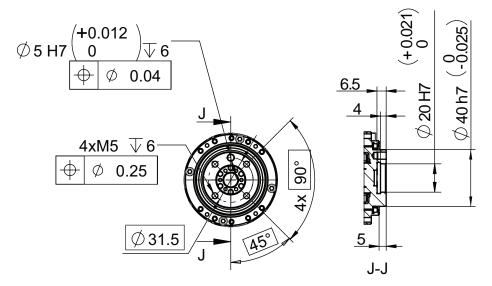
2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment *Continued*

Frame

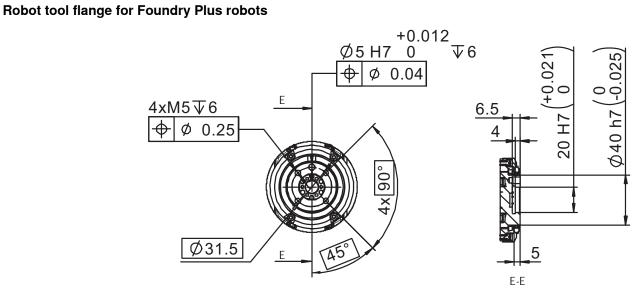


Pos	Description
Α	Holes on both sides

Robot tool flange

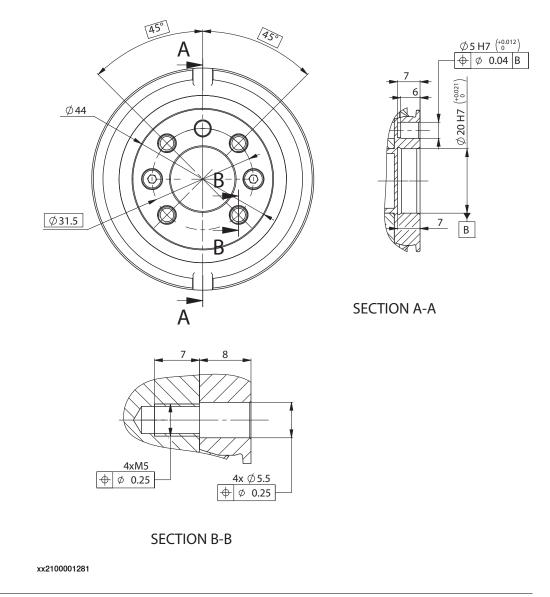


2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment *Continued*



2.3.7.2 Holes for fitting extra equipment *Continued*

Robot tool flange for Hygienic robots



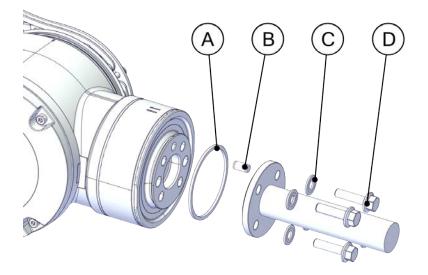
Fastener quality

When fitting tools on the tool flange, only use screws with quality 12.9. For other equipment use suitable screws and tightening torque for your application.

2.3.7.3 Fitting tools on Hygienic robots

2.3.7.3 Fitting tools on Hygienic robots

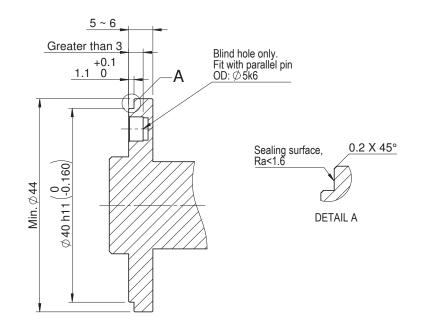
For robots with protection type Hygienic, the gap between the tool flange and tool must be sealed by fitting a gasket, guide pin, stainless flange bolts and FDA washers, which are packaged (package number: 3HAC078800-001) with the robot at delivery.



ltem	Description	Qty.	Note
Α	Gasket	1	
в	Guide pin	1	
С	FDA washers	4	
D	Stainless flange bolts	4	Tightening torque: 6 Nm Always apply a little grease Molykote P1900 to the bolt thread before fitting the tool using the bolts.

2.3.7.3 Fitting tools on Hygienic robots *Continued*

When designing the tools to be fit on the tool flange, make sure the tool dimension meets the following requirements in addition to the dimension of the robot tool flange specified in *Robot tool flange on page 92*.



2.4.1 Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots

2.4 Installation of options

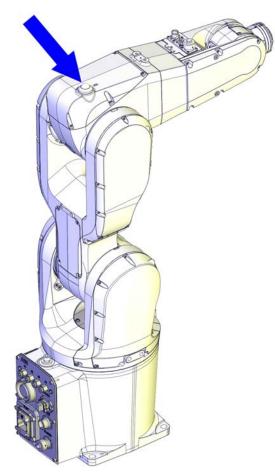
2.4.1 Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots

General

A signal lamp with an yellow fixed light can be mounted on the robot, as a safety device. The signal lamp is required on an UL/UR approved robot. The lamp is active in MOTORS ON mode.

Location of signal lamp

The signal lamp is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300000455

Required spare parts

Spare part	Article number	Note	
Signal lamp	3HAC16738-1		

2.4.1 Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots *Continued*

Required tools

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note		
Standard toolkit		Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .		

Installing the signal lamp

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply • to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before repla- cing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing.	xx130000464
4	Drill a hole with a diameter of 22.5 mm in the center of the raised platform.	xx1300000465
5	Fit the lamp and tighten the nut.	
6	Connect the two lamp cables connectors (R3.H1 and R3.H2) to the cable harness lamp connectors (H1 and H2).	

2.4.1 Installing the signal lamp on IRC5 robots *Continued*

	Action	Note
	Action	note
7	Refit the cover on the upper arm housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
8	For robots with protection type Clean Room: For robots with food grade lubrication: For robots with protection type Hygienic: Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot</i> <i>before replacing parts on page 164</i> . Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
9	The signal lamp is now ready for use and is lit in MOTORS ON mode.	

2.4.2 Installing the signal lamp for OmniCore robots

2.4.2 Installing the signal lamp for OmniCore robots

Description

A signal lamp with a yellow fixed light can be mounted in the cell or any other visible location, and driven by I/O signal or MON_LAMP signal from the controller.

Function

The lamp is active in MOTORS ON mode.

Installation of signal lamp from I/O signal

	Action
1	
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.
2	For robots with OmniCore C line
	Connect the lamp cable connector to the local I/O connector on the controller.
	1 Note
	The local I/O connectors provides 16 digital output signals for use.
3	For robots with OmniCore E line
	Connect the lamp cable connector to the I/O connector on the controller.
	Note
	The I/O connectors provides 8 digital output signals for use.
4	Configure the lamp by adding a <i>System Output</i> type signal with status set to <i>Motors On State</i> .
5	The lamp is now ready for use and is lit in MOTORS ON mode.

Installation of signal lamp from MON_LAMP signal

	Action			
1				
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.			
2	For robots with OmniCore C line			
	Connect the lamp cable connector to the X15 connector on the controller.			
	Note			
	The X15 connector provides MON_LAMP output signals for use.			
	For more details, see chapter <i>Descriptions for connectors</i> in OmniCore product manuals.			

2.4.2 Installing the signal lamp for OmniCore robots *Continued*

	Action
3	For robots with OmniCore E line Connect the lamp cable connector to the MON connector on the controller.
	Note
	The MON connector provides MON_LAMP output signals for use.
	For more details, see chapter <i>Descriptions for connectors</i> in OmniCore product manuals.
4	The lamp is now ready for use and is lit in MOTORS ON mode.

Further information

Further information about the MOTORS ON/MOTORS OFF mode may be found in the product manual for the controller.

Further information about how to set up I/O system may be found in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

2.5.1 Axes with restricted working range

2.5 Restricting the working range

2.5.1 Axes with restricted working range

General

When installing the robot, make sure that it can move freely within its entire working space. If there is a risk that it may collide with other objects, its working space should be limited.

The working range of the following axes may be restricted:

- Axis 1, hardware (mechanical stop) and software. Note! The axis 1 stop is a fixed stop that must be installed during operation of robot!
- Axis 2, hardware (mechanical stop) and software. Note! The axis 2 stop is a fixed stop that must be installed during operation of robot!
- Axis 3, hardware (mechanical stop) and software. Note! The axis 3 stop is a fixed stop that must be installed during operation of robot!
- Axis 4, hardware (mechanical stop) and software. Note! The axis 4 stop is a fixed stop that must be installed during operation of robot!
- Axis 5, hardware (mechanical stop) and software
- Axis 6, software

This section describes how to install hardware that restricts the working range.

Note

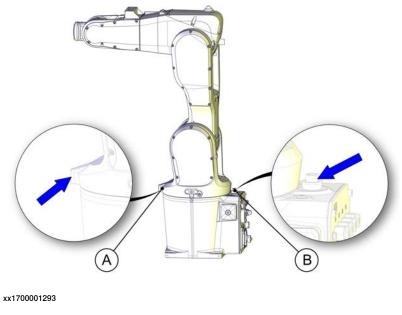
Adjustments must also be made in the robot configuration software (system parameters). References to relevant manuals are included in the installation procedures.

2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

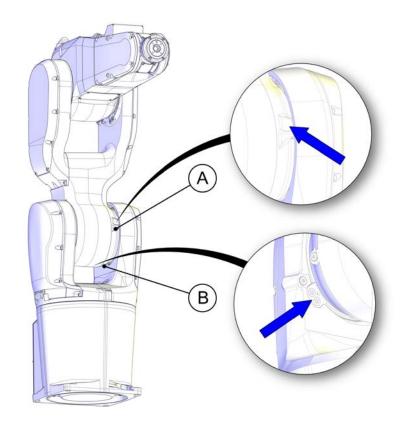
Location of mechanical stops

The figures shows where the mechanical stops are placed on the robot.



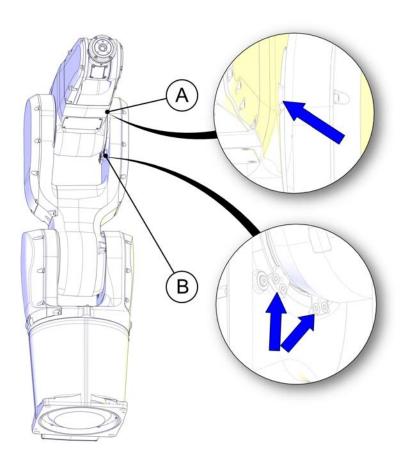
A	Mechanical stop axis 1 (swing)
В	Mechanical stop axis 1 (base)

2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range *Continued*



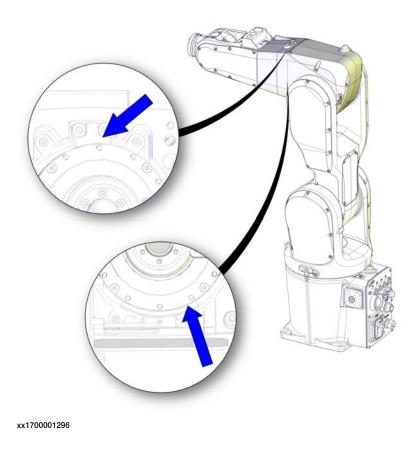
Α	Mechanical stop axis 2 (lower arm)	
В	Mechanical stop axis 2 (swing)	

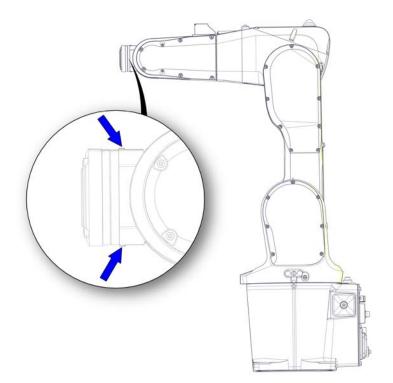
2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range *Continued*



Α	Mechanical stop axis 3 (lower arm)	
В	Mechanical stop axis 3 (tubular)	

2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range *Continued*





xx1700001297

Continues on next page

2.5.2 Mechanically restricting the working range *Continued*

The axis-1, axis-2, axis-3, and axis-4 stops are fixed stops that must be installed during operation of robot. For details about how to install the stops, see:

- Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop on page 645
- Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop on page 461
- Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop on page 464
- Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop on page 467

2.6.1 Additional installation procedure, Clean Room

2.6 Making robot ready for operation

2.6.1 Additional installation procedure, Clean Room

General

Robots with protection type Clean Room are specially designed to work in a clean room environment.

Clean Room robots are designed to prevent from particle emission from the robot. For example, the maintenance work possible to perform without cracking the paint. The robot is painted with four layers of polyurethane paint. The last layer being a varnish over labels to simplify cleaning. The paint has been tested regarding outgassing of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) and been classified in accordance with ISO 14644-8.

Any Clean Room parts that are replaced must be replaced with parts designed for use in Clean Room environments.

Clean Room class 3

According to **IPA test result**, the robot IRB 1200 is suitable for use in Clean Room environment.

Classification of airborne molecular contamination

Parameter				Outgassing amount			
Area (m ²)	Test dura- tion (s)	Temp (°C)	Performed test	Total detec- ted (ng)	Norm based on 1m ² and 1s(g)		
4.5E-03	3600	23	тиос	2848	1.7E-07	-6.8	
4.5E-03	60	90	тиос	46524	1.7E-04	-3.8	

Preparations before commissioning a Clean Room robot

During transport and handling of a Clean Room robot, it is likely that the robot has been contaminated with particles of different kinds. Therefore the robot must be carefully cleaned before installation.

Do not apply force on the plastic covers when lifting the robot! This may result in damage or cracks in the paint around the plastic cover.

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points

2.7 Electrical connections

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Introduction

Connect the robot and controller to each other after securing them to the foundation. The lists below specify which cables to use for each respective application.

Main cable categories

All cables between the robot and controller are divided into the following categories:

Cable category	Description
Robot cables	Handles power supply to and control of the robot's motors as well as feedback from the encoder interface board. Specified in the table <i>Robot cables on page 109</i> .
Customer cables (option)	Handles communication with equipment fitted on the robot by the customer (low voltage signals).
	The customer cables also handle Ethernet communication.
	See the product manual for the controller, see document number in <i>References on page 10</i> .

Robot cables

These cables are included in the standard delivery. They are completely pre-manufactured and ready to plug in.

Cable sub-category	Description	Connection point, cabinet	Connection point, robot
Robot cable, power	Transfers drive power from the drive units in the control cabinet to the robot motors.		R1.MP
Robot cable, signals	Transfers encoder data from and power supply to the en- coder interface board. Transfers resolver data from and power supply to the serial measurement board.	XS2 (IRC5 con- trollers) X2 (OmniCore controllers)	R1.EIB

Robot cable, power

The following table lists the power cables for connecting IRC5 controller.

Power cable length	Article number
3 m (IRC5)	3HAC040503-007
7 m (IRC5)	3HAC040503-001
15 m (IRC5)	3HAC040503-002
22 m (IRC5)	3HAC040503-003
30 m (IRC5)	3HAC040503-004

2 Installation and commissioning

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points *Continued*

The following table lists the power cables for connecting OmniCore controller.

Power cable length	Article number
3 m (OmniCore)	3HAC061139-001
7 m (OmniCore)	3HAC061139-002
15 m (OmniCore)	3HAC061139-003

Robot cable, signals

The following table lists the signal cables for connecting IRC5 controller.

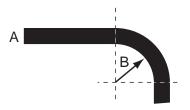
Signal cable length	Article number
3 m (IRC5)	3HAC068916-001
7 m (IRC5)	3HAC068917-001
15 m (IRC5)	3HAC068918-001
22 m (IRC5)	3HAC068919-001
30 m (IRC5)	3HAC068920-001

The following table lists the signal cables for connecting OmniCore controller.

Power cable length	Article number
3 m (OmniCore)	3HAC080671-001
7 m (OmniCore)	3HAC080671-002
15 m (OmniCore)	3HAC080671-003

Bending radius for static floor cables

The minimum bending radius is 10 times the cable diameter for static floor cables.



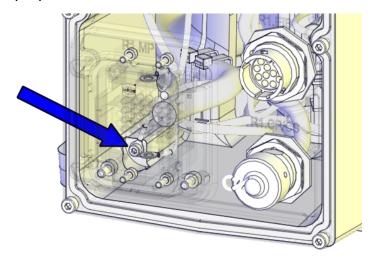
xx1600002016

Α	Diameter
в	Diameter x10

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points Continued

Grounding and bonding point on manipulator

There is a grounding/bonding point on the manipulator base. The grounding/bonding point is used for potential equalizing between control cabinet, manipulator and any peripheral devices.



xx1600001081

Installation of extra O-ring

For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type FoundryPlus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic

2 Installation and commissioning

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points *Continued*

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
O-ring	3HAB3772-19	For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubrication
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
		Used to seal between the main power cable and the connector. Robots with manipulator cables routed from the rear of the base:
		xx1500000243
		Robots with manipulator cables routed from below (option 996-1):
		x150000242
		XX1500000242

The O-ring specified below is delivered together with the robot and must be installed to the main power connector during electrical installation.

Customer cables - CP/CS cable (option)

The following table lists the CP/CS cables for connecting IRC5/IRC5C controller.

CP/CS cable length	Article number
3 m (IRC5)	3HAC049089-001
7 m (IRC5)	3HAC049089-004
15 m (IRC5)	3HAC049089-005
22 m (IRC5)	3HAC049089-006
30 m (IRC5)	3HAC049089-007
3 m (IRC5C)	3HAC049186-001
7 m (IRC5C)	3HAC049186-004
15 m (IRC5C)	3HAC049186-005

Continues on next page

2 Installation and commissioning

2.7.1 Robot cabling and connection points *Continued*

CP/CS cable length	Article number
22 m (IRC5C)	3HAC049186-006
30 m (IRC5C)	3HAC049186-007

The following table lists the CP/CS cables for connecting OmniCore controller.

CP/CS cable length	Article number
3 m (OmniCore)	3HAC049186-001
7 m (OmniCore)	3HAC049186-004
15 m (OmniCore)	3HAC049186-005

Customer cables - Ethernet floor cable (option)

The following table lists the Ethernet cables for connecting IRC5/IRC5C controller.

Ethernet floor cable length	Article number
3 m (IRC5/IRC5C)	3HAC055518-001
7 m (IRC5/IRC5C)	3HAC055518-002
15 m (IRC5/IRC5C)	3HAC055518-003
22 m (IRC5/IRC5C)	3HAC055518-004
30 m (IRC5/IRC5C)	3HAC055518-005

The following table lists the Ethernet cables for connecting OmniCore controller.

Ethernet floor cable length	Article number
7 m (OmniCore)	3HAC055518-002
15 m (OmniCore)	3HAC055518-003

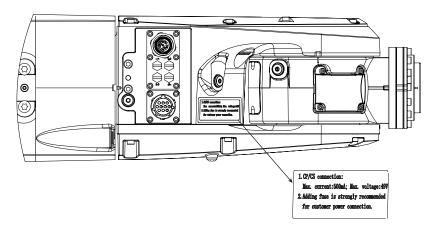
2.7.2 Customer connections

2.7.2 Customer connections

Introduction to customer connections

The cables for customer connection are integrated in the robot and the connectors are placed on the tubular housing (upper arm) and one at the base. There is one connector R4.CP/CS at the tubular housing. Corresponding connector R1.CP/CS is located at the base.

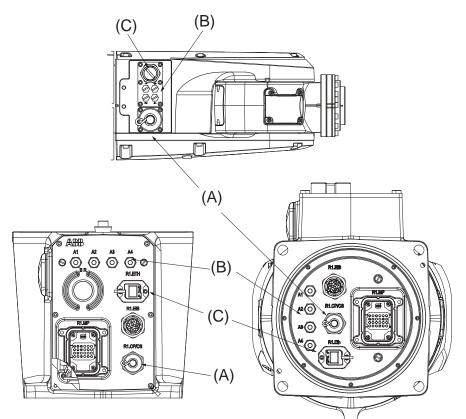
It is recommended to use a fuse protector for customer connection; otherwise, application overload will burn out the CP/CS cables in the robot. Detailed information about the CP/CS connection is provided in a warning label on the tubular housing.



xx1600001687

There is also connections for Ethernet, one connector R4.Ethernet at the tubular housing and the corresponding connector R1.Ethernet located at the base.

2.7.2 Customer connections Continued



Hose for compressed air is also integrated into the manipulator. There are 4 inlets at the base (R1/8") and 4 outlets (M5) on the tubular housing.

xx1300000385

Position	Connection	Description	Number	Value
Α	(R1)R4.CP/CS	Customer power/signal	10	49 V, 500 mA
В	Air	Max. 5 bar	4	Outer diameter of air hose: 4 mm
С	(R1)R4.Ethernet	Customer Ethernet	8	100/10 Base-TX

Connectors

The tables describes the connectors on base and tubular housing (upper arm).

Connectors, base

Position	Description	Art. no.
Robot	Pin connector 10p, bulkhead	3HAC022117-002
Customer connector	Connector set R1.CP/CS	3HAC037038-001

Connectors, tubular housing

Position	Description	Art. no.
Robot	Socket connector 10p, flange mounted	3HAC023624-002
Customer connector	Connector set R3.CP/CS	3HAC037070-001

2 Installation and commissioning

2.7.2 Customer connections *Continued*

Air, connector

Position	Description	Art. no.
Robot	4xM5	
Customer cable	Air connector	3HAC032049-001

2.8 Start of robot in cold environments

2.8 Start of robot in cold environments

Introduction

This section describes how to start the robot in a cold environment if it is not starting the normal way.

Problems with starting the robot

Event message from Motion Supervision

Use this procedure if an event message indicates a problem with Motion supervision at start-up. More information about Motion Supervision is found in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

	Action	Note
1	Turn off Motion Supervision.	
2	Start the robot.	
3	When the robot has reached normal working temper- ature, the Motion Supervision can be turned on again.	

Robot stopping with other event message

Use this procedure if the robot is not starting.

	Action	Note
1	Start the robot with its normal program but with reduced speed.	The speed can be regulated with the RAPID instruction <code>VelSet</code> .

Adjusting the speed and acceleration during warm-up

Depending on how cold the environment is and what program is being used, the speed might need to be ramped up until reached maximum. The table shows examples of how to adjust the speed:

Work cycles	AccSet	Speed/velocity
3 Work cycles	20, 20	v100 (100 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	40, 40	v400 (400 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	60, 60	v600 (600 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	100, 100	v1000 (1000 mm/s)
More than 5 Work cycles	100, 100	Max.

If the program consists of large wrist movements, it is possible that the reorientation velocity, which is always high in predefined velocities, needs to be included in the ramping up.

2.9 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

2.9 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

	Action
1	Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.
2	Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.
3	Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.
4	Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.
5	Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.
6	Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.
7	If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was main- tained.
8	Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.

Collision risks



When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.

3.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes all the maintenance activities recommended for the IRB 1200.

It is based on the maintenance schedule found at the beginning of the chapter. The schedule contains information about required maintenance activities including intervals, and refers to procedures for the activities.

Each procedure contains all the information required to perform the activity, including required tools and materials.

The procedures are gathered in different sections and divided according to the maintenance activity.

Safety information

Observe all safety information before conducting any service work.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter Safety on page 21 before performing any service work.

The maintenance must be done by qualified personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.



Note

If the IRB 1200 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 1200 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any maintenance work.

For more information see:

- Product manual OmniCore C30
- Product manual OmniCore C90XT
- Product manual OmniCore E10
- Product manual IRC5
- Product manual IRC5 Compact
- Robot cabling and connection points on page 109. •

3.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

3.2 Maintenance schedule

3.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

Introduction	
	The intervals are specified in different ways depending on the type of maintenance activity to be carried out and the working conditions of the IRB 1200:
	 Calendar time: specified in months regardless of whether the system is running or not.
	 Operating time: specified in operating hours. More frequent running means more frequent maintenance activities.
	Robots with the functionality <i>Service Information System</i> activated can show active counters in the device browser in RobotStudio, or on the FlexPendant.
Overhaul	
	Depending on application and operational environment a complete overhaul may be necessary in average around 30000 hours.
	ABB Connected Services and its Assessment tools can help you to identify the real stress level of your robot, and define the optimal ABB support to maintain your robot working.
	Contact your local ABB Customer Service to get more information.

3.2.2 Maintenance schedule

Scheduled and non-predictable maintenance

The robot must be maintained regularly to ensure proper function. The maintenance activities and intervals are specified in the table below.

Non-predictable situations also give rise to inspections of the robot. Any damages must be attended to immediately!

Life of each component

The inspection intervals do not specify the life of each component.

Activities and intervals, standard equipment

The table below specifies the required maintenance activities and intervals:

Maintenance activities	Regularly ⁱ	Every 12 months	Every 36 months	Every 6,000 operating hours	Reference
Cleaning activities	-		1		
Cleaning the robot	x				Cleaning the IRB 1200 on page 153
Inspection activities					
Inspecting the robot	x				Check for abnormal wear or contamination. For robots with protection type Clean Room: Inspect daily
Inspecting the paint	x				Inspecting the robot paint on page 123
Inspecting the robot cabling ⁱⁱ	x ⁱⁱⁱ				Inspecting the robot cabling on page 124
Inspecting the information labels		x			Inspecting the information labels on page 125
Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop pin	x ^{iv}				Inspecting mechanical stops on page 130
Inspecting the axis-2 mechanical stop	x ^{iv}				Inspecting mechanical stops on page 130
Inspecting the axis-3 mechanical stop	x ^{iv}				Inspecting mechanical stops on page 130
Inspecting the axis-4 mechanical stop	- v				
Inspecting the timing belts			x		Inspecting timing belts on page 133
Replacement/changing activities			-		
Replacing the battery pack ^{vi}					Replacing the battery pack on page 138
Replacing the axis-6 sealing set on tool flange for Hygienic robots		x ^{vii}		x ^{vii}	Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots on page 148

3.2.2 Maintenance schedule *Continued*

Maintenance activities	Regularly ⁱ	Every 12 months	Every 36 months	Every 6,000 operating hours	Reference
Replacing the mechanical stops, axes 1, 2, 3 and 4				x	Replace mechanical stops of the Clean Room robots that are disinfected with specific pre- wetted wipes listed in <i>Disinfection instruc-</i> <i>tions for Clean Room robots on page 155</i> . Mechanical stop replacement procedures are specified in <i>Repair on page 163</i> .
specified by the rol working environme shorter intervals. T shorter intervals. ii The robot cabling c	oot mar nt and he mor compris age or r if the r	nufactu moven e dema ses the cracks mechai	cabling is deten is deten	e intern. (moven g betwe ected o op is h	

The robot needs to be disassembled according to section *Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop* on page 467 in order to get access to and inspect the mechanical stop.

- Vi The battery low alert (38213 Battery charge low) is displayed when remaining backup capacity (robot powered off) is less than 2 months. Typical life of a new battery is 36 months if the robot is powered off 2 days/week, or 18 months if the robot is powered off 16 hours/day. The life can be extended (approximately 3 times) for longer production breaks by a battery shutdown service routine. See the operating manual of the controller.
- See the replacement instruction for more details.
- vii Replace the sealing set every 12 months or every 6000 operating hours. The actual interval depends on the operation cycle of the robot, its working environment and movement pattern. Generally, the more contaminated environment, the shorter intervals.

Activities and intervals, optional equipment

The table below specifies the required maintenance activities and intervals:

Maintenance activities		Reference
	Every 12 months	
Inspection activities		
Inspecting the signal lamp	x	Inspecting the signal lamp (option) on page 136

3.3 Inspection activities

3.3.1 Inspecting the robot paint

General

For robots with protection type Hygienic, there is a risk of surface corrosion or paint peeling in case of mechanical damage to the coated surface. Therefore, it is important to regularly inspect robot surfaces for any paint breaking or damage.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Spare parts	Note
Lint free cloth		
Touch up paint Clean Room/Hy- gienic	3HAC036639-001	White

Inspection, robot paint

	Action	Description
1	Visually inspect the robot surface paint for any paint breaking.	
2	If there is paint breaking, clean the surface so that it is free from oil and grease.	Use a lint free cloth.
3	Use Touch up paint Clean Room/Hygienic, white to paint any damaged surfaces.	3HAC036639-001
	1 Note	
	Always read the instruction in the product data sheet in the paint repair kit for Clean Room/Hygienic.	

3.3.2 Inspecting the robot cabling

3.3.2 Inspecting the robot cabling

Introduction



For robots with protection type Clean Room

For robots with protection type Hygienic

Always read the specific instructions before doing any repair work, see *Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164*

Location of robot cabling

The robot cabling comprises the cabling between the robot and controller cabinet.

Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

Inspection, robot cabling

Use this procedure to inspect the robot cabling.

	Action	Note
1		
	 Turn off all: electric power supply to the robot hydraulic pressure supply to the robot air pressure supply to the robot Before entering the robot working area. 	
2	 Visually inspect: the control cabling between the robot and control cabinet Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damage. 	
3	Replace the cabling if wear or damage is detected.	

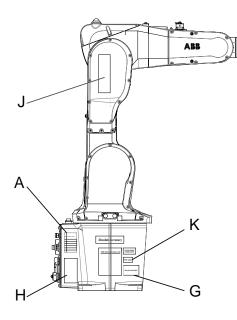
3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels

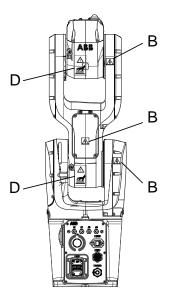
3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels

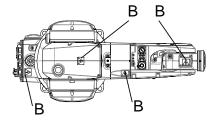
Location of labels

These figures show the location of the information labels to be inspected. The symbols are described in section *Safety symbols on manipulator labels on page 25*.

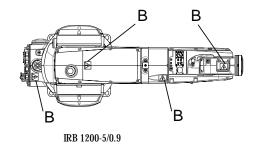
Illustration 1 of 2







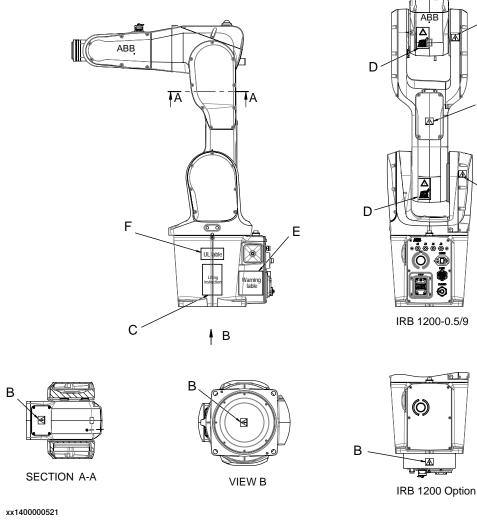
IRB 1200-7/0.7



xx1400000520

3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels *Continued*

Illustration 2 of 2



	Description	Illustration
А	Calibration label	
В	Warning label Flash	xx1300001091

В

В

В

3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels *Continued*

C	Instruction label Lifting of robot	x140000518
D	Warning label Heat	xx1300001087
		xx1700000984
E	Instruction label Brake release Moving robot Brake release buttons	x1400000519
-		xx1400000519
F	UL label	
G	Rating label	

3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels Continued

Η	Warning label Tip risk when loosening bolts	xx140000527
J	Clean Room label	xx1600001074
	Foundry Plus label	Xx1600001075

3.3.3 Inspecting the information labels Continued

к	Type A label	TYPEA 3HAC061568-001 xx1600002136
	Type B label	TYPE B 3HAC061569-001 xx1600002137

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Labels and plate set	3HAC051417-001	Not valid for protection type Hy- gienic. Includes all safety and informa- tion labels required for the robot. Missing, damaged or illegable labels must be replaced.

Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Inspecting, labels

	Action	Note
1		
	Turn off all:	
	electric power supply	
	 hydraulic pressure supply 	
	air pressure supply	
	to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
2	Inspect the labels, located as shown in the figures.	
3	Replace any missing or damaged labels.	Article numbers for the labels and plate set is specified in <i>Spare parts on page 905</i> .

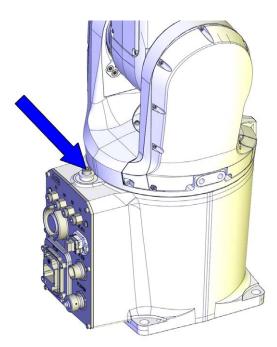
3.3.4 Inspecting mechanical stops

3.3.4 Inspecting mechanical stops

Location of mechanical stops

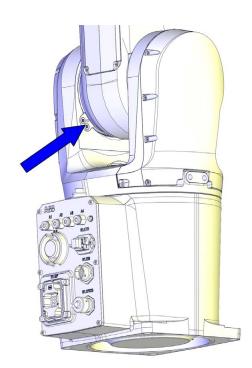
The mechanical stops on axes 1, 2 and 3 are located as shown in the figures.

Axis 1



xx1400000391

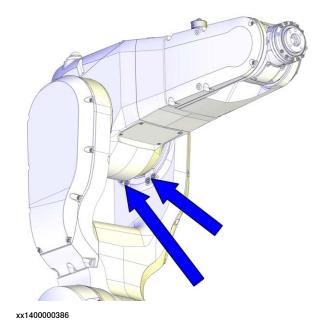
Axis 2



xx1400000389

3.3.4 Inspecting mechanical stops Continued

Axis 3



Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical stop set, axis 1	3HAC049630-001	Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc), washer and screw.
Mechanical stop set, axis 2	3HAC049637-001	Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc) and screws.
Mechanical stop set, axis 3	3HAC049644-001	Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc) and screws.

Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

3.3.4 Inspecting mechanical stops *Continued*

Inspecting mechanical stops

Use this procedure to inspect mechanical stops on axes 1, 2 and 3.

	Action	Information
1		
	Turn off all: electric power supply hydraulic pressure supply 	
	• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Inspect the mechanical stops.	See the figures in: • Location of mechanical stops on page 130
3	 Replace if the mechanical stop is: bent loose damaged. 	
	Note	
	The expected life of gearboxes can be reduced as a result of collisions with the mechanical stop.	
4	For Clean Room robots that are disinfected with specific pre-wetted wipes, replace the mechanical stops if some of the below is discovered: • discoloration • loss of gloss	See specific pre-wetted wipes in <i>Disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots on page 155</i> .

3.3.5 Inspecting timing belts

3.3.5 Inspecting timing belts

Introduction

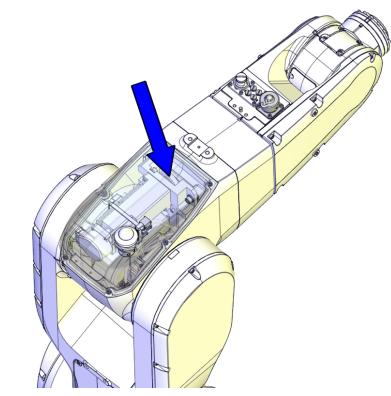
1

Always read the section "General procedures" before doing any repair work. *Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.*

Location of timing belts

The timing belts are located as shown in the figures.

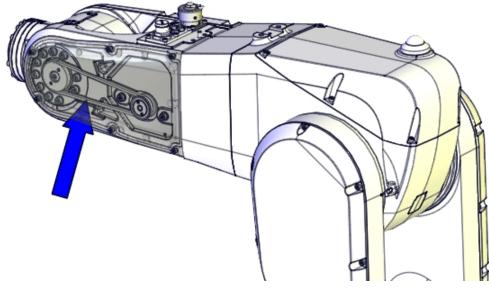
Axis 4



xx1400000036

3.3.5 Inspecting timing belts *Continued*

Axis 5



xx140000032

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Note
Standard toolkit	The content is defined in the section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .
Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.	

Inspecting timing belts

Use this procedure to inspect timing belts.

	Action	Information
1	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Gain access to each <i>timing belt</i> by removing the cover.	
3	Check the timing belts for damage or wear.	
4	Check the <i>timing belt pulleys</i> for damage.	
5	If any damage or wear is detected, the part must be replaced!	

3.3.5 Inspecting timing belts Continued

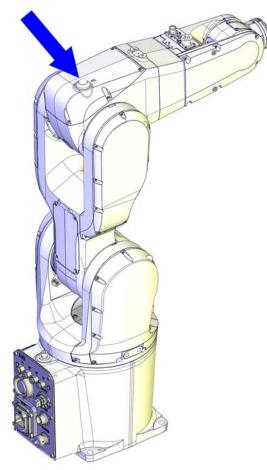
	Action	Information
6	Check whether timing belts are slack manually.	
	If the belt has no tension, adjust it!	

3.3.6 Inspecting the signal lamp (option)

3.3.6 Inspecting the signal lamp (option)

Location of signal lamp

The signal lamp is located as shown in this figure.



xx1300000455

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Signal lamp kit	See Spare parts on page 905.	To be replaced if damage is detected.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Stand-ard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Inspecting, signal lamp

Use this procedure to inspect the function of the signal lamp.

	Action	Note
1	Inspect that signal lamp is lit when motors are put in operation ("MOTORS ON").	

3.3.6 Inspecting the signal lamp (option) *Continued*

	Action	Note
2		
	Turn off all:	
	electric power supply	
	 hydraulic pressure supply 	
	air pressure supply	
	to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
3	If the lamp is not lit, trace the fault by: • inspecting whether the signal lamp is broken. If so, replace it.	Article number is specified in <i>Re- quired tools and equipment on page 136</i> .
	 inspecting cable connections. 	
	 inspecting the cabling. Replace the cabling if a fault is detected. 	

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack

3.4 Replacement/changing activities

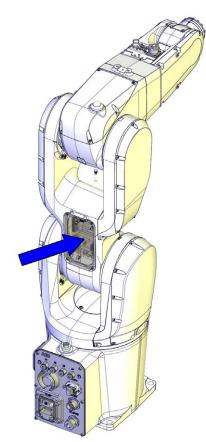
3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack



The battery low alert (38213 **Battery charge low**) is displayed when remaining backup capacity (robot powered off) is less than 2 months. Typical life of a new battery is 36 months if the robot is powered off 2 days/week, or 18 months if the robot is powered off 16 hours/day. The life can be extended (approximately 3 times) for longer production breaks by a battery shutdown service routine. See the operating manual for the robot controller.

Location of battery pack

The battery pack is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002574

Continues on next page

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack Continued

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Battery pack	3HAC051036-001	Battery includes protection cir- cuits. Only replace with a spe- cified spare part or an ABB-ap- proved equivalent.
Battery pack, SafeMove 2-sup- ported	3HAC044075-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
Battery pack, Hygienic		For robots with protection type Hygienic
		Battery includes protection cir- cuits. Only replace with a spe- cified spare part or an ABB-ap- proved equivalent.
Gasket on EIB/SMB cover	3HAC056728-001 / 3HAC080706-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .



Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts. See *Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164*.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

Removing the battery pack

Use this procedure to remove the battery pack.

Preparations before removing the battery pack

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	This is done in order to facilitate updating of the revolution counter.
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Removing the battery pack

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the connector cover attachment screws on the lower arm and carefully open the cover. CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover!	
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the connectors on the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB	R2.EIB R2.EIB R2.KI400000812
6	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	 Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. R1.ME1,2,4,5 R1.ME3,6 R2.SMB 	R2.SMB R1.ME3.6 R1.ME3.6 R1.ME1.2.4.5 xx1700000005
8	Disconnect the battery cable.	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type spe- cified) and IRB 1200 Type A
		xx1300002571 Valid for IRB 1200 Type B

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack Continued

	Action	Note
9	Cut the cable strap that secures the battery and remove the battery.	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type spe- cified) and IRB 1200 Type A
	Note Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with a specified spare part or with an ABB- ap- proved equivalent.	xx1300002579 Valid for IRB 1200 Type B

Refitting the battery pack

Use these procedures to refit the battery pack.

Refitting the battery pack

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room: For robots with food grade lubrication: For robots with protection type Hygienic: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
3	Fit the battery and and secure it with a cable strap. Note Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with a specified spare part or with an ABB- approved equivalent.	cified) and IRB 1200 Type A
		xx170000007

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack Continued

	Action	Note
4	Connect the battery cable.	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A
		Valid for IRB 1200 Type B
		x170000006
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (not type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.EIB R2.EIB R1.ME4-6 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-7 R1.ME4-

3 Maintenance

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.SMB R1.ME3,0 R1.ME1,2,4,5 xx170000005
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm View of the screws, never replace them with other screws.

3.4.1 Replacing the battery pack Continued

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Update the revolution counters.	See Updating revolution counters on page 819.
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room:	
	For robots with food grade lubrication:	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic:	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
3		
	Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118</i> .	

3 Maintenance

3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots

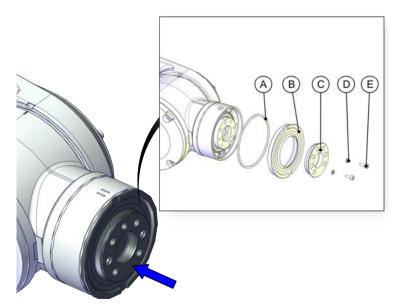
3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots

General

To ensure the sealing efficiency, sealing parts on the tool flange of Hygienic robots is recommended to be replaced at an interval of 12 months or 60000 operating hours.

Location of the sealing set

Parts of the sealing set on the tool flange of Hygienic robots are located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001485

Α	Gasket, axis 6, Hygienic	Recommended to replace at a 12-month interval.
В	Seal ring unit	Recommended to replace at a 12-month interval.
С	Stainless shaft	Replace if damaged.
D	Sealing washer	Recommended to replace at a 12-month interval.
E	Stainless screws	Replace if damaged.

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots
Continued

Spare part	Art. no.	Note
Gasket, axis 6, Hygienic	3HAC078798-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Seal ring unit	3HAC079688-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged. The seal ring unit is wear part.
Sealing washer	3HAC034160-003	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .
Flange tightening tool	3HAC079686-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic Used for loosen and tighten the seal ring unit on tool flange of the Hygienic robots.
Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange	3HAC079684-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Grease		Molykote P1900 For robots with protection type Hygienic

Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts. See *Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164*.

Replacing the sealing parts on tool flange of Hygienic robots

Action	Note
Turn off all:	
electric power supply	
 hydraulic pressure supply 	
air pressure supply	
to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working

3 Maintenance

3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws and washers.	xx2100001449
3	Insert two M4 screws to the pressed out holes and press out the stainless shaft.	x210001451
4	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and loosen the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001
5	Remove the gasket and seal ring unit.	xx2100001453

Continues on next page

3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Replace the parts with new ones.	
7	Apply a little grease to the screw thread.	Grease: Molykote P1900
		xx2100001454
8	Put the gasket in place and then screw the seal ring unit.	
		xx2100001453
		xx2100001455
9	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and tighten the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001 Tightening torque: 8 Nm
		xx2100001456

3 Maintenance

3.4.2 Replacing the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots *Continued*

	Action	Note
10	Fit two guide pins to the tool flange.	Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange: 3HAC079684-001
11	Place the stainless shaft on the tool flange with guidance of the two guide pins. Make sure the pin hole on the shaft aligned with the pin on the tool flange.	xx2100001458
12	Secure with screws and washers.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm
13	Remove the guide pins.	xx2100001460

3.5 Cleaning activities

3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200



Turn off all:

- · electric power supply
- hydraulic pressure supply
- air pressure supply
- to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.

General

To secure high uptime it is important that the IRB 1200 is cleaned regularly. The frequency of cleaning depends on the environment in which the product works. Different cleaning methods are allowed depending on the type of protection of the IRB 1200.



Always verify the protection type of the robot before cleaning.

Special cleaning considerations

This section specifies some special considerations when cleaning the robot.

- Always use cleaning equipment as specified. Any other cleaning equipment may shorten the life of the robot.
- Always check that all protective covers are fitted to the robot before cleaning.
- Never point the water jet at connectors, joints, sealings, or gaskets.
- · Do not use compressed air to clean the robot.
- Never use solvents that are not approved by ABB to clean the robot.
- Do not spray from a distance closer than 0.4 m.
- Do not remove any covers or other protective devices before cleaning the robot.

Cleaning methods

The following table defines what cleaning methods are allowed depending on the protection type.

Protection	Cleaning method			
type	Vacuum cleaner	Wipe with cloth	Rinse with water	High pressure water or steam
Standard IP40	Yes	Yes. With light cleaning deter- gent.	No	No

3 Maintenance

3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200 *Continued*

Protection	Cleaning method					
type	Vacuum cleaner	Wipe with cloth	Rinse with water	High pressure water or steam		
IP67 (option)	Yes	Yes. With light cleaning deter- gent.	Yes. It is highly re- commended that the water contains a rust-prevention solution and that the manipulator is dried afterwards.	No		
Foundry Plus	Yes	Yes. With light cleaning deter- gent or spirit.	Yes. It is highly re- commended that the water contains a rust-prevention solution.	Yes ⁱ . It is highly recommended that the water and steam contains rust preventive, without cleaning deter- gents.		
Clean room	Yes	Yes. With light cleaning deter- gent. ⁱⁱ See Additional cleaning instruc- tions for Clean Room robots on page 154.	No	No		
Hygienic	Yes	Yes. Only with detergent and disinfectants re- commended by ABB.		Yes. Only limited to specif- ic areas with assistance of protective equipment. ^{III}		

i Perform according to section *Cleaning with water and steam on page 156*.

ⁱⁱ For Clean Room robots operating in environments that have a disinfection requirement, the robots shall be disinfected using specific pre-wetted wipes. See *Disinfection instructions for Clean Room* robots on page 155.

iii Perform according to section *Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic on page 158*.

Wiping with cloth

Additional cleaning instructions for Clean Room robots

ABB robots with protection types *Clean Room* are designed to be cleaned at a low cleaning frequency, before entering the cleanroom environment, after robot commissioning or during cleanroom maintenance.

Wipe-down cleaning method is recommended. Robot surfaces shall be wiped with clean and low particle emission cleanroom cloth which is soaked in 70% ethanol

Use the following procedure to clean Clean Room robots:

- 1 Before cleaning, use the lint free cloth to remove dirt, debris or any other contaminant from the to-be cleaned surfaces.
 - Make sure no visible residues left.
 - Never apply hard forces on or rub against the robot surfaces to remove dirt or debris; otherwise, protective paint layers may be damaged.

3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200 Continued

- 2 Wet a clean cloth with the cleaning detergent and then wipe the robot painting surfaces.
 - Make sure no cleaning agents are sprayed onto robot surfaces or into the robot structure.
 - Wipe from the surface center to edge and always in the same direction.
- 3 Wait a few minutes for detergent volatilization.
 - Make sure no residue of cleaning agents left on the robot surfaces after wipe down cleaning.

Disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots

Some robot operation environments may have a higher requirement on the cleanness. In addition to common cleaning activities, disinfection of the external surfaces of the robots could be required. ABB robots with protection types *Clean Room* could be used in such environments and be disinfected on a daily basis under certain conditions.

Wipe-down cleaning method is recommended for disinfection on robot external surfaces, with following specific pre-wetted wipes:

- Ecolab KlerwipeTM 70/30 IPA blended with DI Pouch wipes
- Ecolab KlerwipeTM 70/30 Denatured Ethanol wipes
- Diversey® ClearKlens IPA wipes
- Diversey® Suma Alcohol wipes

Use the following procedure to disinfect Clean Room robots:

- 1 Before disinfection, prepare pre-wetted wipes specified in previous list.
 - Do not submerge wipes in solvents or use other pre-wetted wipes not listed.
 - Always read the Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) of the selected wipe product for safe handling before disinfection.
- 2 Turn off all electric power supply, hydraulic pressure supply and air pressure supply to the robot before disinfection.
- 3 Wipe the robot starting from one area and move the wipes systematically towards to the opposite side. Repeat the wiping until all the external surfaces are well wiped.
 - Make sure the wiped surfaces covered by two sequential wiping movements are overlapped by 20%-30%.
 - Wipe from the least contaminated area to most contaminated area, until covering all the exposed surfaces.
 - Never apply hard forces on or rub against the robot surfaces; otherwise, protective paint layers may be damaged.
 - Never force the wipes into joints or cover gaps.
 - Never leave the wipes in contact with the robot surfaces for a prolonged period.

3 Maintenance

3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200 *Continued*



Disinfection on the robot with a high frequency, such as daily, shall be accompanied with an increased times of inspections on the overall robot surfaces, visible sealings and mechanical stops. See *Maintenance schedule on page 121* for recommended inspection duration and *Inspection activities on page 123* for detailed inspection procedures.



End users/system integrators shall take the responsibility of assessing whether the disinfection is sufficiently implemented and reaches the disinfection degree required for the intended application and environment.

Additional cleaning instructions for robots with food grade lubrication

Make sure that no liquid flows into the robot or stagnates in any gap or surface after cleaning.

Cleaning with water and steam

Instructions for rinsing with water

IRB 1200 with protection class IP67 (option) and with protection type *Foundry Plus* can be cleaned by rinsing with water (water cleaner).¹

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Maximum water pressure at the nozzle: 700 kN/m² (7 bar)
- Fan jet nozzle should be used, min. 45° spread
- Minimum distance from nozzle to encapsulation: 0.4 meters
- Maximum flow: 20 liters/min¹
- I Typical tap water pressure and flow

Instructions for steam or high pressure water cleaning

ABB robots with protection types *Foundry Plus*, *Wash*, or *Foundry Prime* can be cleaned using a steam cleaner or high pressure water cleaner.²

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Maximum water pressure at the nozzle: 2500 kN/m² (25 bar)
- Fan jet nozzle should be used, min. 45° spread
- · Minimum distance from nozzle to encapsulation: 0.4 meters
- Maximum water temperature: 80° C

Cables

Movable cables need to be able to move freely:

- Remove waste material, such as sand, dust and chips, if it prevents cable movement.
- ¹ See *Cleaning methods on page 153* for exceptions.
- ² See *Cleaning methods on page 153* for exceptions.

```
Continues on next page
```

3.5.1 Cleaning the IRB 1200 Continued

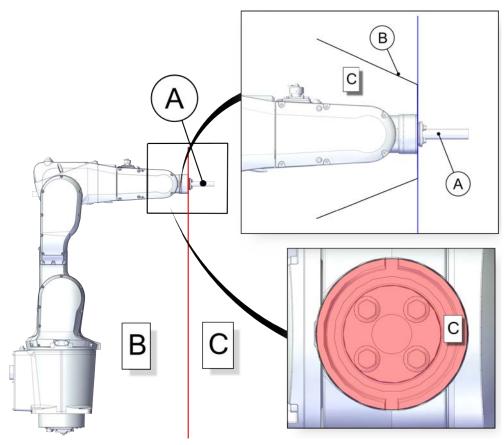
• Clean the cables if they have a crusty surface, for example from dry release agents.

3.5.2 Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic

3.5.2 Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic

Overview

Hygienic robots are designed with special sealings and coatings. The axis-6 tool flange is also equipped with stainless steel sealing set. These special designs allow the Hygienic robots to be wiped down or washed down using corresponding proper detergents according to actual working environments and applications. Cleaning methods also vary according to the to-be-cleaned surfaces and parts of the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic. Always use the proper cleaning method according to the actual applications and strictly follow the cleaning procedure.



xx2100001401

Α	User tools	
В	Wipe down area	The robot body without any protection should use the wipe down method for cleaning. If the robot body is properly covered by protective device or equipment, the wash down method is also applic- able.
С	Wash down area	In most cases, the tool flange surface should use the wash down method for cleaning. Users can also perform wipe down cleaning on this part ac- cording to their applications.

Required equipment

Equipment	Note
High pressure washer	
Lint free cloth	

Usable detergents

Detergent	Туре	Product concentra- tion (v/v)	Note
Disinfectant	DRYSAN [™] DUO	100%	
Disinfectant	Topactive DES	2%-3%	
Detergent	Topax66	2%-4%	Applicable to protein cleaning
Detergent	Topaz AC3	2%-4%	
Detergent	Topaz HD 1	2%-10%	Applicable to fat cleaning

Always use the recommended detergents listed in previous table for cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic. Contact ABB if using any disinfectants and detergents other than the listed ones before conducting cleaning activities.

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Read the material safety data sheet (MSDS) before using any chemicals.
- Always use proper protective equipment like gloves, goggles, safety boots, face shields and apron when using chemicals.

Cleaning instructions



Turn off all electrical power, hydraulic and pneumatic pressure supplies before entering the workspace of the manipulator.

Also read the safety sections:

- Pneumatic or hydraulic related hazards on page 34
- Electrical safety on page 33
- Safety during maintenance and repair on page 36

3.5.2 Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic *Continued*

Wash down procedure

	Action	Not	te
1	 Before cleaning, Use protective devices and equipment to make sure the painted surfaces of the robot body (wipe down areas) not exposed directly to sprayed detergents, disinfectants and ejected water. If user tools are removed from the robot flange before the cleaning, conduct protective measures on screw holes to make sure no intrusion of soils, water, detergents and disinfectants into the holes during cleaning. 	xx210	D00001402
		в	Protective devices or equip- ment
		С	Wipe down area
2	Pre-rinse with water for removal of food residues from to-be-cleaned areas. Make sure no visible residues left.		commended water temperature: - 60 ° C
3	Foam the surface with detergent Topax66 or To- paz HD 1. Use a sprinkling can so that the to-be-cleaned areas can be covered evenly with sufficient foamy detergent.		 Detergent: Topax66, concentration (v/v) 2 % Detergent: Topaz HD1, concentration (v/v) 2 %
4	Wait 15 minutes. Let the detergent work for approx 15 minutes to retain effective cleaning properties. Ensure that the cleaning agent does not dry on the surface.		
5	Rinse thoroughly with water to remove the deter- gent.		commended water temperature: - 60°C
6	Foam the surface with detergent Topaz AC3. Use a sprinkling can so that the to-be-cleaned areas can be covered evenly with sufficient foamy detergent.		ergent: Topaz AC3, concentra- n (v/v) 2 %
7	Wait 15 minutes. Let the detergent work for approx 15 minutes to retain effective cleaning properties. Ensure that the cleaning agent does not dry on the surface.		
8	Rinse thoroughly with water to remove the deter- gent.		commended water temperature: - 60°C
9	Foam the surface with disinfection Topactive DES. Use a sprinkling can so that the to-be-cleaned areas can be covered evenly with sufficient foamy disinfection.		ergent: Topactive DES, concen- ion (v/v) 2 %
10	Wait 15 minutes.		

3.5.2 Cleaning the IRB 1200 with protection type Hygienic Continued

	Action	Note
11	Rinse thoroughly with water to remove the disin- fection.	Water temperature: ambient
12	Wipe the surface dry with lint free cloth.	
13	 If user tools are removed from the robot flange before the cleaning, then, after cleaning, Make sure no residues left on the tool flange or screw holes before reinstall the tools or any other accessories to the flange. 	

Wipe down procedure

	Action	Note
1	Before cleaning, use the lint free cloth to remove soils or any other contaminant from the to-be- cleaned surfaces. Make sure no visible residues left.	
2	Spray disinfectant DRYSAN TM DUO on robot surfaces, or wet a clean cloth with the disinfectant and then wipe the robot surfaces.	Disinfectant: DRYSAN TM DUO, concentration (v/v) 100 %
3	Wait 1-2 minutes for disinfectant volatilization.	

This page is intentionally left blank

4 Repair

4.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes repair activities for the IRB 1200. Each procedure contains the information required to perform the activity, for example spare parts numbers, required special tools, and materials.



Repair activities not described in this chapter must only be carried out by ABB.

Report replaced units



Note

When replacing a part on the IRB 1200, report to your local ABB the serial number, the article number, and the revision of both the replaced unit and the replacement unit.

This is particularly important for safety equipment to maintain the safety integrity of the installation.

Safety information

Make sure to read through the chapter *Safety on page 21* before commencing any service work.



Note

If the IRB 1200 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 1200 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any repair work.

For more information see:

- Product manual OmniCore C30
- Product manual OmniCore C90XT
- Product manual OmniCore E10
- Product manual IRC5
- Product manual IRC5 Compact

4.2.1 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

4.2 General procedures

4.2.1 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

General

Follow the procedures in this section whenever breaking the paint of the robot during replacement of parts.

For robots with protection type Clean Room

For robots with food grade lubrication

For robots with protection type Hygienic

When replacing parts on the robot, it is important to make sure that after the replacement, no particles will be emitted from the joint between the structure and the new part, and that the easy cleaned surface is retained.

Required equipment

Equipment	Spare parts	Note
Sealing compound	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521 FC. Color white.
Sealing compound for Hygienic robots	3HAC073510-001	Trans clear
Tooling pin		Width 6-9 mm, made of wood.
Cleaning agent		Ethanol
Knife		
Lint free cloth		
Touch up paint Clean Room/Hy- gienic	3HAC036639-001	White
Touch up paint Standard/Foundry Plus	3HAC067974-001	Graphite White

Removing

	Action	Description
1	Cut the paint with a knife in the joint between the part that will be removed and the struc- ture, to avoid that the paint cracks.	xx230000950
2	Carefully grind the paint edge that is left on the structure to a smooth surface.	

Refitting



Refitting is required only for robots with protection type Clean Room, with food grade lubrication and with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Description
1	Before the parts are refitted, clean the joint so that it is free from oil and grease.	Use ethanol on a lint free cloth.
2	Place the tooling pin in hot water.	
3	Seal all refitted joints with sealing compound.	
		xx0900000122
4	Use the tooling pin to even out the surface of the sealing compound.	xx0900000125
5	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Wait 10 minutes. For robots with protection type Hygienic Wait 40 minutes.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Sikaflex 521FC skin dry time (10 minutes). For robots with protection type Hygienic Trans Clear skin dry time (40 minutes).
6	Use Touch up paint Clean Room/Hygienic, white to paint any damaged surfaces. Note Always read the instruction in the product data sheet in the paint repair kit for Clean Room/Hygienic.	3HAC036639-001

4 Repair

4.2.1 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts *Continued*



After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.

4.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings

General

This section describes how to mount different types of sealings.

Equipment

Consumable	Article number	Note
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Shell Gadus S2
Grease	3HAC043771-001	LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-
		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Used for robots with protection type Hygienic.

Rotating sealings

The following procedures describe how to fit rotating sealings.

Please observe the following before commencing any assembly of sealings:

- Protect the sealing during transport and mounting, especially the main lip on radial sealings.
- Keep the sealing in its original wrappings or protect it well before actual mounting.
- The fitting of sealings and gears must be carried out on clean workbenches.
- Use a protective sleeve for the main lip during mounting, when sliding over threads, keyways or other sharp edges.
- Do not lubricate a static side of a sealing with grease, since this may result in movement of the sealing during operation.

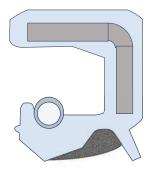
The only exception for lubrication of static sides of a sealing, is to use P-80 rubber lubrication gel against certain aluminium surfaces. If usage of P-80 is relevant, it is stated in the repair procedures.

4 Repair

4.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings *Continued*

Radial sealings

A radial sealing consists of a flexible rubber lip bonded to a rigid metal case. Only one side of the sealing is static with a metal insert.



xx2300000433

	Action	Note
1	Check the sealing to ensure that:The sealing is of the correct type.There is no damage on the main lip.	
2	Inspect the shaft surface before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the shaft must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the shaft surface to get rid of the defect.	
3	Lubricate the sealing with grease just before fitting. (Not too early - there is a risk of dirt and foreign particles adhering to the sealing.) Fill 2/3 of the space between the dust lip and the main lip with grease. If the sealing is without dust lip, just lubricate the main lip with a thin layer of grease.	Article number is specified in Equipment on page 167. A Main lip B Grease C Dust lip Note Ensure that no grease is ap- plied to the red marked surface.

4.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings Continued

	Action	Note
4	Mount the sealing correctly with a mounting tool. Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage.	
		xx2000000072 A Gap
5	Make sure that no grease is left on the robot surface.	-

Flange sealings and static sealings

The following procedure describes how to fit flange sealings and static sealings.

	Action
1	Check the flange surfaces. They must be even and free from pores. It is easy to check flatness using a gauge on the fastened joint (without sealing com- pound). If the flange surfaces are defective, the parts may not be used because leakage could occur.
2	Clean the surfaces properly in accordance with the recommendations of ABB.
3	Distribute the sealing compound evenly over the surface.
4	Tighten the screws evenly when fastening the flange joint.

O-rings

The following procedure describes how to fit o-rings.

	Action	Note
1	Ensure that the correct o-ring size is used.	
2	Check the o-ring for surface defects, burrs, shape accuracy, or deformation.	Defective o-rings, including damaged or deformed o-rings, may not be used.

4.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Check the o-ring grooves and mating surfaces. They should be free of pores, contamination and obvious scratches/damage.	
4	Lubricate the o-ring with grease.	
5	Tighten the screws evenly while assembling.	
6	Check that the o-ring is not squashed outside the o-ring groove.	
7	Make sure that no grease is left on the robot surface.	

4.2.3 Sealing differences depending on protection class

Standard IP40 vs optional IP67

The IRB 1200 has IP40 as standard protection class. If the robot is delivered with option IP67, many of the covers are equipped with gaskets, several components has been applied with locking liquid etc.

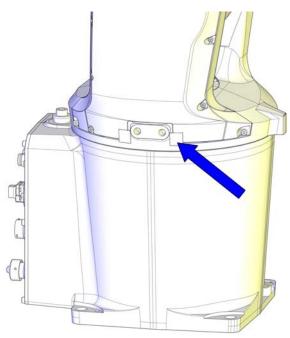
This means that there are differences in the repair procedures depending on the robot protection class. These are clearly stated in the step-by-step procedures.

4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots

4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots

Location of the swing sealing plug

The swing sealing plug is located as shown in the figure.



xx1600000264

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Swing sealing plug	3HAC053687-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit		Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots Continued

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic

Removing the swing sealing plug

	Action	Note
1	Cut the swing sealing plug through with a sharp object to get access to the screws.	xx160000206
2	Remove the cable housing cover of the swing by removing the screws.	x160000207

4 Repair

4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Detach the swing sealing plug from the cable housing cover.	x160000208

Refitting the swing sealing plug

	Action	Note
1	Mask the gap between the swing and the base.	xx160000209
2	Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the swing cable housing cover.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
3	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint. Make sure the sealant fully covers the gap but is not applied to the screw cavities.	

4.2.4 Swing sealing plug for Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Wait for the sealant to dry and then remove the mask.	Sikaflex 521FC skin dry time: 10 minutes Trans Clear skin dry time: 40 minutes
5	Apply a little sealant to the inner surface of the swing sealing plug.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear xx1600000211 xx1600000211
6	Refit the swing sealing plug.	xx160000212
7	If there is any overflowing sealant, remove and clean it. Make sure no space exists between the swing sealing plug and the robot casting, and the sealant string is fully jointed with the plug.	xx160000213

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package

4.3 Cable harness

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package

Location of the main cable package

The main cable package runs from the base, up through the swing, up through the lower arm and into the housing. Inside the housing there is a division point for the axis-5 and axis-6 motor cables.

The main cable package includes the air hoses and the cabling for all the six motors. Optional Ethernet cabling can also be included.

The air hoses and optional Ethernet must be disconnected inside the wrist unit before the cable package can be removed.

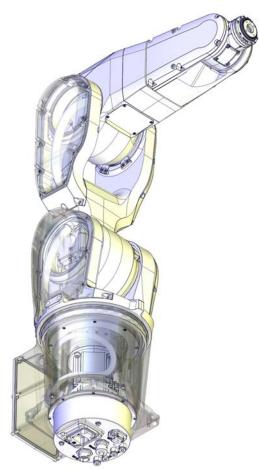
As standard feature, the connector interface is located at the rear of the base. The interface can also be bottom mounted, as an option. This section describes both configurations.

Connector interface at the rear of the base (standard)



xx1300002414

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*



Connector interface at the bottom of the base (option)

xx1400000410

Required spare parts

Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface)	3HAC059673-001	With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface)	3HAC059674-001	With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface), Clean Room	3HAC056219-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Manipulator cable harness with		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Ethernet (rear interface), food grade lubrication		With connector interface at rear of the base.

177

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), Clean Room Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), food grade lubrication	3HAC056220-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (bottom interface)	3HAC051415-001	With connector interface at bot- tom of the base.
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (bottom inter- face)	3HAC051416-001	With connector interface at bot- tom of the base.
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface), Safe- Move 2-supported	3HAC084083-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), SafeMove 2-supported	3HAC084086-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface), Clean Room and SafeMove 2-suppor- ted Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface), food grade lubrication and SafeMove 2-supported Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (rear interface), Hygien- ic	3HAC084084-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), Clean Room and SafeMove 2-supported Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), food grade lubrication and SafeMove 2-supported Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (rear interface), Hygienic	3HAC084087-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. With connector interface at rear of the base.
Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (bottom interface), SafeMove 2-supported Manipulator cable harness with Ethernet (bottom interface), Hy- gienic.	3HAC0084082-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used with protection type Hy- gienic. With connector interface at bot- tom of the base.
Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (bottom inter- face), SafeMove 2-supported Manipulator cable harness without Ethernet (bottom inter- face), Hygienic.	3HAC084085-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used with protection type Hy- gienic. With connector interface at bot- tom of the base.

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Cable harness material set	3HAC049663-001	Includes brackets, sheets, dis- tance screws, plastics, cable clamp, seal bolts and air protec- tion in tubular.
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes gasket (3HAC078804- 001).
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.
Base bottom cover (standard configuration)	3HAC049667-001	Replace if damaged.
Base rear cover, without connect- or interface	3HAC059675-001	Replace if damaged.
Base rear cover, without connect- or interface, Clean Room Base rear cover, without connect- or interface, food grade lubrica- tion Base rear cover, without connect- or interface, Hygienic	3HAC056147-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for rear base cover	3HAC058566-001 / 3HAC080710-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
O-ring	3HAB3772-86	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-47	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-002	Used with protection class IP67. Used only on base 3HAC049628-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883. Replace if damaged.
Axis-1 sealing ring	3HAC044676-001 / 3HAC068107-001 ⁱ	Replace if damaged.

4 Repair

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
V-ring	3HAB3732-34	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Only on swing version 3HAC058000-001, 3HAC059554- 001 and 3HAC082506-001. See <i>Spare part versions for the</i> <i>swing on IP40/IP67 robots on</i> <i>page 884</i> . Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC081398-001	Used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC044677-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC045688-001 / 3HAC080697-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip Gasket of plastic plate	3HAB3701-41 3HAC044894-001 / 3HAC080695-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged. Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Cable protection	3HAC044691-001	Replace if damaged.
Torx countersunk head screw M3x5	3HAC14286-4	Replace if damaged.
Cover on top of swing	3HAC059679-001	Replace if damaged.
Cover on top of swing, Clean Room Cover on top of swing, food grade lubrication Cover on top of swing, Hygienic	3HAC056133-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on top swing cover	3HAC056696-001 / 3HAC080698-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-004	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing	3HAC059678-001	Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic	3HAC056214-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056726-001 / 3HAC080704-001	Not used for robots with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
PTFE film on cable housing cover	3HAC044660-001	Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
EIB/SMB cover	3HAC059692-001	Replace if damaged.
EIB/SMB cover, Clean Room EIB/SMB cover, food grade lub- rication EIB/SMB cover, Hygienic	3HAC056137-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on EIB/SMB cover	3HAC056728-001 / 3HAC080706-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Motor bracket	3HAC044689-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover	3HAC059684-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic	3HAC056142-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Cable bracket on swing	3HAC044925-001	

For information on which sealing ring to be ordered, see *Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886*.

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

i

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit	3HAC049703-001	Always use three guide pins together!
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Equipment	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas.
Grease	3HAC029132-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas for robots with food grade lubrication and robots in protection type Hygienic.
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection type Clean Room.
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room.
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
		For robots with protection class IP67.
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus.
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the main cable package

Use these procedures to remove the main cable package from the robot.

Preparations before removing the main cable package

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581

	Action	Note
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

Action	Note
Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with locking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace if damaged or missing.	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	xx2100001406

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Disconnecting the axis-5 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical	
	power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i>	
	on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

	Action	Note
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xt130002390

Disconnecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	If equipped, disconnect the CP/CS connector.	xx150000252

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

IS-4 F	PC connectors	
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xx130002400
4	Remove the plate.	xx130002413

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	xt130002412
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	xt30002398

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xx130000456

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx130002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xr130002495

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

191

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	x130002420

Removing the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the screw that fastens the air hose hold- er.	x130002422

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	xx130002421
5	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	xx1300002423
6	Pull out the fix sheet a bit, to access the screws that fasten the cable bracket to the sheet. Loosen the bracket from the sheet by removing the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx130002424
7	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Cut the cable straps at the bottom of the housing.	

Disconnecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
3	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
4	Remove the EIB/SMB cover attachment screws on the lower arm and carefully open the cover. CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors and lugs are disconnected, as shown in following step.	xx130002427
6	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the connectors on the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm. Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the lugs on the EIB/SMB cover.	R2.EIB R1.ME1-3
		xx1300002428

	Action	Note
		note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	
8	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm.	xx170000004

Removing the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Pull the cable package out from the upper arm housing.	

	Action	Note
4	Remove the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	xt130002426
5	Pull out the cable package a bit from the lower arm and remove the bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx1300002430
6	Cut the cable strap that holds the cabling together inside the EIB/SMB cavity.	xx1400001130
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Removing the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 173</i> .	xx160000205

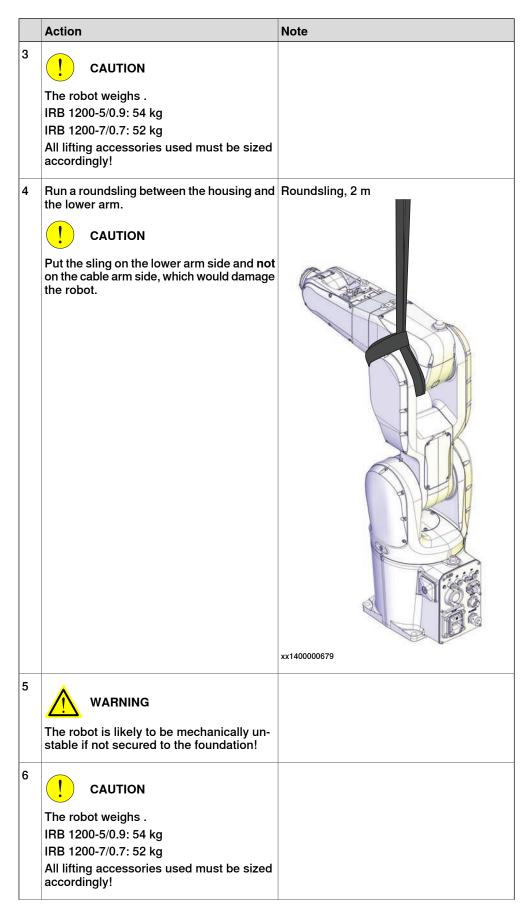
	Action	Note
8	Remove the swing cable housing cover by remov- ing the screws.	х130002431
9	Cut the cable straps.	x140001528
10	Remove the axis-2 motor bracket screws.	xt130002432

	Action	Note
11	Pull out the cabling and then remove the axis-2 motor bracket from the cable package by remov- ing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	х130002433
12	Disconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Loosen the cable housing from the swing by re- moving the screws. Leave it hanging on the cable package.	x130002435

	Action	Note
	Action	Note
14	Remove the axis-2 sealing ring by removing the screws.	xt40000020
15	Pull out the cable package from the lower arm.	
	Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
16	Loosen the plastic plate from the cable housing in order to facilitate continued removal of the cable package .	xx140000023

Putting the robot on its side

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

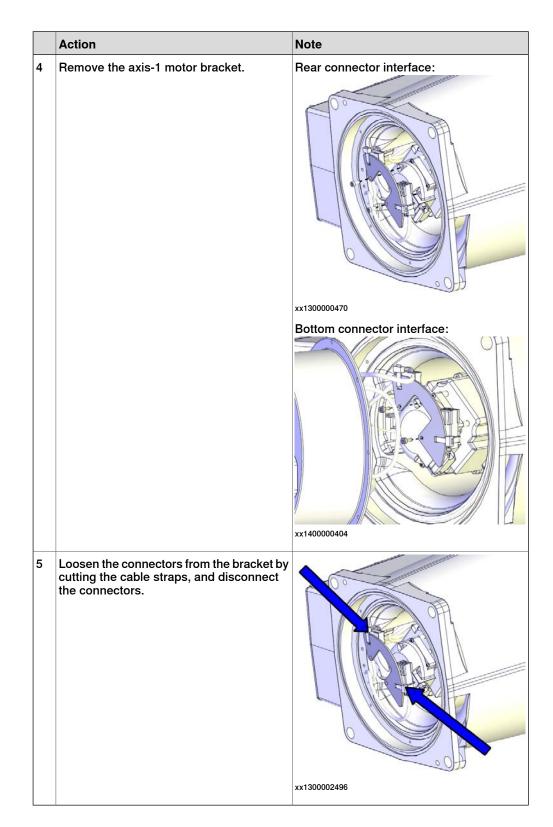


	Action	Note
7	Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side.	хх140000680

Disconnecting the axis-1 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the bottom cover.	Rear connector interface:
		xx1300000469 Bottom connector interface:
		x140000403



Separating the arm system from base

oton		
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the swing top cover by removing the screws. Tip Fit M4 screws in the cover holes to pull out the cover more easily. Only tighten the screws lightly in order not to damage the threads.	xx130000467
4	Remove the screws and washers.	xx130000471

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the base slightly and turn it aside. Tip Remember the cable layout in the base. The cabling must be positioned and angled in the same way during refitting.	xx130000472

Removing the cable package from the axis-1 sealing ring

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the axis-1 sealing ring from the swing and carefully run the cable package out from the swing.	хх130002438
4	Remove the swing (including arm system) com- pletely from the base and lay it aside on a safe location.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Remove the cable bracket from the cabling, if the cable package is to be replaced with a new spare part.	xx1300022446

Removing the cable package from the base

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

Cabling with rear interface

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the rear of the base.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Open the base cover.	x130002448
4	Disconnect the earth cable.	

	Action	Note
5	Pull the cable package out from the base, through the rear.	xx1300002456

Cabling with bottom interface, and cabling routed from below

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the bottom of the base and the cabling is routed from below.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Open the base cover.	xx140000405
4	Remove the brake release button from the base cover.	
5	Disconnect the earth cable.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.	xt140000406
7	Remove the bracket inside the base by removing the screws.	xx140000407
8	Pull the cable package out from the base, through the bottom.	x140000411

Refitting the main cable package

Use these procedures to refit the cable package.

Adjusting the air hose length for IRB 1200-7/0.7

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Valid for IRB 1200-7/0.7 If the cable harness is a new spare part, cut off 100 mm length of each air hose at the upper end.	
	Note	
	The same cable harness spare part is used for IRB 1200-5/0.9 .	

Refitting the cable package to the base

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

Cabling with rear interface

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the rear of the base.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket on the base cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for rear base cover: 3HAC058566-001 (not Hygienic robots)/3HAC080710-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
3	Insert the cable package in and up through the base, through the rear.	
4	Reconnect the earth cable.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Refit the base cover with the attachment screws.	
6	Route the cable package inside the base as shown in the figure. Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xx140000480

Cabling with bottom interface, cabling routed from below

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the bottom of the base and the cabling is routed from below.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Insert the cable package in and up through the base, through the bottom.	

	Action	Note
3	Refit the bracket inside the base with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
4	Refit the cable bracket with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the base cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for rear base cover: 3HAC058566-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080710-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
6	Reconnect the earth cable.	
7	Refit the brake release button to the base cover.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Refit the base cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16). Tightening torque: 4 Nm. If the information of the informat
9	Route the cable package inside the base as shown in the figure. Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	хх140000480

Refitting the cable package to the axis-1 sealing ring

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged.	Axis-1 sealing ring: 3HAC044676- 001 / 3HAC068107-001 ⁱ
3	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: Add sealant to the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.)	Sealant: Sikaflex 521FC.

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001, 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: Check the V-ring on the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.) Replace if damaged.	V-ring: 3HAB3732-34 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: xx1600001124 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001: xx1600001150 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC068107-001: xx1900001736
6	Check the cable protection on the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged. If replacing the cable protection, use locking liquid Loctite 243 on the screws.	Cable protection: 3HAC044691-001 Torx countersunk head screw M3x5: 3HAC14286-4 Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm

	Action	Note
7	Refit the cable bracket to the cabling, if removed. Use Loctite 243 on the screw threads.	Cable bracket on swing: 3HAC044925-001
		Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
		xx130002446
8	Refit the axis-1 sealing ring to the swing and	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	carefully run the cabling into the swing.	xx130002438

i For information on which sealing ring to be ordered, see Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.

Assembling the swing and base

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

215

	Action	Note
2	Check the axis-1 radial sealing in the base. Replace if damaged.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-47 M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-002
	Note	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when	6.600
	replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
	For robots with protection class IP67 Check the M2 variseal sealing in the base.	xx1400000472
	Replace if damaged. The M2 variseal sealing is only installed on base version 3HAC049628-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 ro- bots on page 883.	nig, protocilon clocvo) en pago reci
	Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply grease to the radial sealing surface.	Grease: 3HAC058065-001.
		xx1600000170

	Action	Note
4	Fit the guide pins to the drive unit.	Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit: 3HAC049703-001
		xx1300002566 Always use three guide pins together!
5	Refit the swing to the base with guidance from the guide pins while running the cabling up through the swing. Position and angle the cabling inside the base as it was positioned during removal. CAUTION Be careful not to squeeze any cabling dur- ing the refitting procedure.	
6	Secure with attachment screws and washers, but do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-52 (M10x35).

	Action	Note
7	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing attachment screws and washers.	х×130000523
8	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 40 Nm.
9	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on top swing cover 3HAC056696-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080698-001 (Hygienic robots) Coversion of the second

	Action	Note
10	Refit the swing top cover with the screws. Replace if damaged.	

Connecting the axis-1 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the connectors and secure the connectors to the bracket with cable straps.	
		xx1300002496
3	Refit the axis-1 motor bracket.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Rear connector interface:
		xx130000470 Bottom connector interface:

For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the O-ring. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAB3772-86
Refit the bottom cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Rear connector interface:
	xx130000469 Bottom connector interface:
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the O-ring. Replace if damaged.

Securing the robot to the foundation

	the foundation			
	Action	Note		
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrica- tion For robots with protection type Hy- gienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.			
2	CAUTION The robot weighs . IRB 1200-5/0.9: 54 kg IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!			
3	For robots with: protection class IP67, protection type Foundry Plus protection type Clean Room food grade lubrication with protection type Hygienic and manipulator cables routed from below Check the gasket at the bottom of the base. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAB3772-141 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Used with manipulator cables routed from be- low		
4	Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers.			

Refitting the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Check the axis-2 sealing ring. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC081398- 001 (for robots in IP40) / 3HAC044677-001 (for robots not in IP40) Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC045688-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080697-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing plastic plate. Replace if damaged.	Gasket of plastic plate: 3HAC044894-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080695-001 (Hygienic ic robots)

	Action	Note
4	Fetch the cable housing, the plastic plate and the axis-2 sealing ring and run the cable package through them.	xx140000025
5	Fasten the plastic plate to the cable housing, if removed. Replace if damaged.	The plastic plate is included in: Cable harness material set: 3HAC049663-001.

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 004

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replace- ment.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-41
8	Guide the cable package into the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
9	Refit the axis-2 sealing ring with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
10	Refit the cable housing with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10). Tightening torque: 3 Nm. Ightening torque: 3 Nm.
11	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	Type Type Type

	Action	Note
12	Reconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the cable pack- age with the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
14	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the motor.	xx1300002432

	Action	Note
15	Secure the connector R2.MP2 and its cable with cable straps onto the motor bracket. Make sure the connector is fixed by its tab to the bracket.	xx1400001529
16	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xt140000482
17	 In order to keep the cabling away from the hot axis-2 motor, the cable package must be secured accordingly inside the EIB/SMB cavity: 1 The cable package is strapped with tape by the supplier at two locations. Put a cable strap around the cable package at each location. 2 Insert a third cable strap through the top strap and the bottom strap, and close the strap to secure the cable package and keep it in place. See the figure. 	

	Action	Note
18	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056726-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080704-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
19	Check the PTFE film. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
20	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and to the PTFE film surface.	

	Action	Note
21	Refit the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Cable housing cover of the swing: 3HAC059678-001
	Note	Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room
	Remember to refit the two lower screws shown	Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication
	in the figure.	Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic
		: 3HAC056214-001
		Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8).
		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx1300002431
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
22	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
23	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Refit the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Refitting the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 174</i> .	Swing sealing plug:3HAC053687- 001
24	Refit the lower arm bracket to the cable package. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Connecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the EIB/SMB cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on EIB/SMB cover: 3HAC056728-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080706-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R1.ME4-6 R1.ME4-6 R1.ME1-3 R1.ME1-3 Xx1300002428
6	 1200 Type A Connect the lugs to the EIB/SMB cover. Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. R1.ME1,2,4,5 R1.ME3,6 R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection. 	R2.SMB R1.ME3,6 R1.ME1,24,5

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
		xx1700000004
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima

	Action	Note
9	Refit the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Refitting the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Before guiding the cable package into the housing and upper arm, apply grease to the cable package, to the area going into the upper arm, shown in the figure. Cover all moving area of the package.	cable package already fitted to the
		xx140000483

	Action	Note
3	Guide the cable package into the upper arm, through the housing. Note Guide the air hoses (A) underneath the bottom side of the axis-3 motor and the axis-3 motor cables (B) on top of the motor, see cable layout figure. The fix point of the air hoses is pre-determined (marked) and must be matched against the air hose holder on the left side of the axis-3 motor. Note The air hose holder keeps the air hoses arranged in an optimized way. It is necessary to keep the air hose holder vertically and firmly against the left side of the axis-3 motor.	xx1400001472
4	Refit the bracket to the sheet with two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
6	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
7	Fit the air hose holder to the bracket. Replace the holder, if damaged. Tip If the air hose holder is difficult to fit, firstly remove the bracket from the fix sheet by removing the two M3 screws. Fit the holder to the bracket and then refit the complete assembly to the fix sheet again. Tightening torque for the two M3 screws: 1.5 Nm.	
8	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xx130002420

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000754
10	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Secure the cable package at the bottom of the housing with cable straps.	

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xt130002371

	Action	Note
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xt130002494

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors.	
	See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	xx1300002399

	Action	Note
3	Reconnect the FPC connectors and push them into place inside the housing. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	x:1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684-001
		Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

	Action	Note
13	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001

	Action	Note
3	 If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the gasket. Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574. 	xx150000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling:	Plate without connector set: 3HAC078810-001
	Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
	Replace if damaged.	xx2100001433
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket. Replace if damaged.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001 Gasket: 3HAC078804-001

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	xx1300002349
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication
		x1600001153
		Note Only use specified screws, never replace
	Note	them with other screws. For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

4.3.1 Replacing the main cable package *Continued*

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Reconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then secure the cover.	xx1400000477 Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

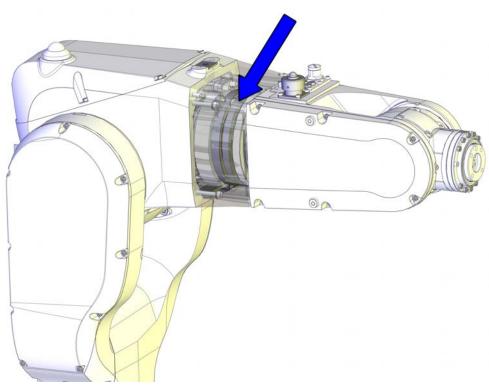
	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	xx1600000215
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.
6	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118</i> .	

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings

Location of the FPC unit

The axis-4 FPC unit and the housing extender sealings are located inside the housing extender unit, as shown in the figure.



xx1300002419

Required spare parts

Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
FPC unit, axis 4	3HAC082235-001	
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-48	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-007	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Housing extender unit	3HAC059686-001	Replace if damaged.

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings
Continued

Spare part	Article number	Note
Housing extender unit, Clean Room	3HAC059703-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Housing extender unit, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Housing extender unit, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
PTFE film on cable housing cover	3HAC044660-001	Replace if damaged.
Washer	3HAC044869-001	Replace if damaged
Housing small cover	3HAC059684-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover, Clean Room	3HAC056142-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Housing small cover, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Housing small cover, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049699-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the FPC unit and the housing extender sealings

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 FPC unit and the housing extender sealings.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog axis 4 to zero position.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working	
4	area. CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
	Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with locking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Provide Series and Washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace if damaged or missing.	xx1600001148 For robots with protection type Hygienic
		xx2100001406

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. • R3.MP5	KEL
	• R3.ME5	
	Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002360

Removing the axis-5 motor with pulley

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	хх130002350

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the timing belt.	xx1300002351
5	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xt130002390
6	Remove the screws and pull out the motor.	xx1300002352

Removing the wrist

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the connectors shown in the figure.	xx1300002353
4	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1300002355
5	Remove the connector plate attachment screws.	x130002356

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings Continued

	Action	Note
6	Guide the hoses through the plate hole and re- move the plate.	xx130002357
7	Support the weight of the wrist and remove the screws and the washer.	хх130002358
8	Pull out the wrist carefully while at the same time pulling all connectors and the air hoses out of the wrist. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	xx1300002359

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	FPC connectors	. .
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	хх130002400
4	Remove the plate.	xx130002413

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	x130002412
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	xt130002398

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Removing the housing extender unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	xx1300002373
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the plugs covering the extender unit screws with a needle-nose plier.	xx160000262

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Remove the extender unit screws.	xx1300002372
6	Remove the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling.	xx130002374

Removing the axis-4 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the mechanical stop assembly from the housing extender unit by removing the screws.	xx1300002415

Removing the axis-4 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the FPC unit from the housing extender unit by removing the screws. CAUTION The lower screw, highlighted with a ring in the figure, is very closely located to the cabling. Be careful not to damage the cabling with the screwdriver when remov- ing/refitting the screw.	xx130002417

Refitting the FPC unit and the housing extender sealings

Use these procedures to refit the FPC unit and the housing extender sealings.

Checking	the	housina	extender	sealings
			•/	

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-007
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. In order to replace the radial sealing, both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit must be removed from the hous- ing extender unit, if not already removed.	
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the housing ex- tender unit.	

		•• •
	Action	Note
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049699-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the housing extender unit with the six screws M6X50.	
		xx1400000436
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	10000437
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	
11	Refit both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit to the housing extender unit.	

Refitting the axis-4 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Refit the FPC unit to the housing extender unit and secure with the screws. CAUTION The lower screw, highlighted with a ring in the figure, is very closely located to the cabling. Be careful not to damage the cabling with the screwdriver when remov- ing/refitting the screw. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make	Tightening torque: 0.5 Nm.
	sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	xx1300002417

Refitting the housing extender unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the housing extender unit.	хх130002613

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Make sure the four cavities are fully filled with glue. If not, fill glue again before the refitting.	xx1600000216
4	Refit the housing extender unit to the housing while putting the FPC cables into the housing and the air hoses through the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling. CAUTION Make sure that the axis-4 FPC unit is in its zero position when refitting the housing extender unit. Note Mate the unit to the two locating pins attached to the housing.	xx1300002374
5	Secure with screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243.	Screws: M4x30. Tightening torque: 2.7 Nm.
6	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Press in screw sealing plugs to cover the screws.	Screw sealing plug: 3HAC053685- 001

Continues on next page

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Fit and secure the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	
		xx1300002399

	Action	Note
3	Reconnect the FPC connectors and push them into place inside the housing. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 : With the second s
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	xx1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

	Action	Note
13	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

Refitting the wrist

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Put the connectors and air hoses into the wrist carefully while at the same time refitting the wrist to the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors.	
		xx1300002359
	Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	
	x130002611	
3	Refit the washer while at the same time putting the cables through its center.	Washer: 3HAC044869-001
	Replace washer, if damaged.	x140000001

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings Continued

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screw M6x35 (1 pc). Do not tighten yet.	Screw: 3HAB3409-238 (M6x35 (1 pc)).
5	Refit the rest of the screws (M5x35 (7 pcs)).	Screw: 3HAB3409-237 (M5x35 (7 pcs)).
6	Tighten all screws.	' Tightening torque: 8 Nm.
7	Put the cables through the plate hole and refit the plate.	

Continues on next page

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Reconnect the air hoses.	
	Make sure to connect the air hoses correctly, ac- cording to the marking on hoses and connectors.	xx1300002355
9	Reconnect the connectors. • R3.Eth • R3.CPCS	xt1300002353

Preparations before securing the axis-5 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. 	
3	Place the motor at its mounting position and fasten the attachment screws and washers just enough to still be able to move the motor.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16).

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note	
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.		
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx130002351	
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	Note Do not strech the timing belt too much!	
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.		
		xx1300002350 Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.	

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.3.2 Replacing the axis-4 FPC unit, housing extender unit and housing extender sealings *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

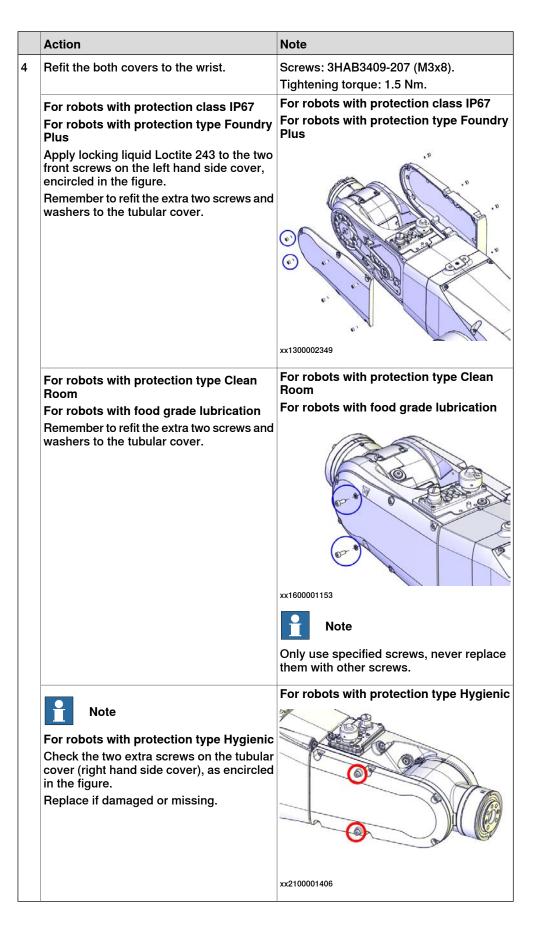
Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000345



Concluding procedure

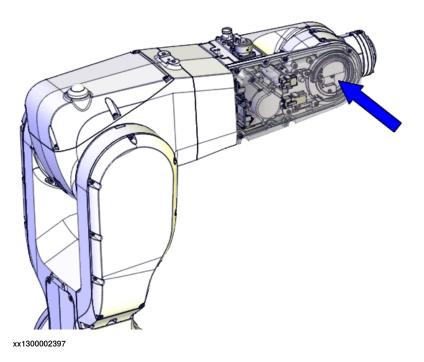
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in sec- tion <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit

Location of axis-5 FPC unit

The axis-5 FPC unit is located as shown in the figure.



Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
FPC unit, axis 5	3HAC045743-001	
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-009	Used with protection class IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus.
		Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing	3HAB3701-42	Not used with protection class IP40 and protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Tubular cable housing	3HAC059695-001	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Tubular cable housing, Clean Room	3HAC056143-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Tubular cable housing, Hy- gienic	3HAC079692-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049701-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Flange sealing	3HAC026759-003	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant
Find previous reference values for the axis	
or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair proced-	
ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot.	Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i>
If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	routine on page 824.
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the FPC unit

Use these procedures to remove the FPC unit.

Preparations before removing the axis-5 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx130002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
5	Remove the tubular cable housing cover.	xx1300002389

Removing the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note	
1			
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.		
2			
	For robots with protection type Clean Room		
	For robots with food grade lubrication		
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the		
	paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.		
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC con- nectors.		
		xx1300002390	

287

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the connector plate by first removing the screws.	xx1300002391
5	Remove the cable housing of the tubular by first removing the screws. Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic The frame is glued and needs to be pried off.	xx1300002392

Removing the axis-5 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the sleeve screws.	xx1300002393

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the sleeve by screwing in two of the screws into the press out holes to force the sleeve out.	хх130002582
5	Remove the FPC unit attachment screws and pull out the FPC unit as far as required for the axis-6 motor connectors to be accessed.	xx130002394
6	Disconnect the axis-6 motor connectors and re- move the FPC unit completely.	xt1300002395

Refitting the FPC unit

Use these procedures to refit the FPC unit.

Refitting the axis-5 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1		
	It is important that axis 5 is in zero position when fitting the FPC unit.	
	Make sure that the FPC is in zero position and does not get twisted during refitting.	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
3	Reconnect the axis-6 motor connectors to the FPC unit.	хx130002395
4	Carefully refit the FPC unit and secure with screws. Note Check that the FPC unit is at the zero pos- ition when refitting it.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting sur- faces of the sleeve. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the over- flowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealing, Loctite 574 For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealing, Trans Clear
6	Refit the sleeve and secure with screws. Replace if damaged.	Sleeve: 3HAC044661-001 Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Checking the tubular cable housing sealings

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit Continued

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-009
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	Radial sealing: 3HAB3701-42
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the tubular cable housing.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049701-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the tubular cable housing with the six screws M6x40.	

Continues on next page

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	<image/> <image/>
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the tubular cable housing. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the overflowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the tubular cable housing with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Tubular cable housing: 3HAC059695-001
		Tubular cable housing, Clean Room
		Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication
		: 3HAC056143-001
		Tubular cable housing, Hygienic: 3HAC079692-001
		xt130002392

Refitting the connector plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the connector plate and secure with the M3 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Secure the three M2.5 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
		x1400001402

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and	
	wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

Refitting the tubular cable housing cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345
3	Refit the cover to the cable housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

4.3.3 Replacing the axis-5 FPC unit *Continued*

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit

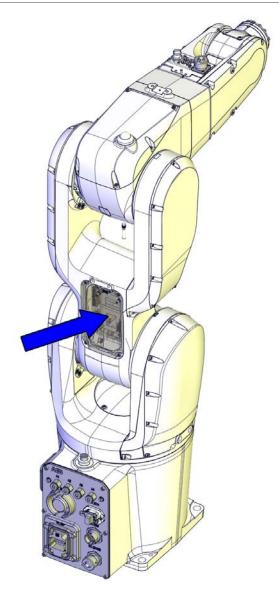
4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit

Location of EIB/SMB unit

The EIB/SMB unit is located as shown in the figure.



The EIB unit is used for IRB 1200 no type specified and IRB 1200 Type A. The SMB unit is used for IRB 1200 Type B.



xx1300002574

Continues on next page 298

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
EIB unit	3HAC045759-001	
SMB unit	3HAC059122-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
Gasket on EIB/SMB cover	3HAC056728-001 / 3HAC080706-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Required consumables

Equipment	Article number	Note
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.

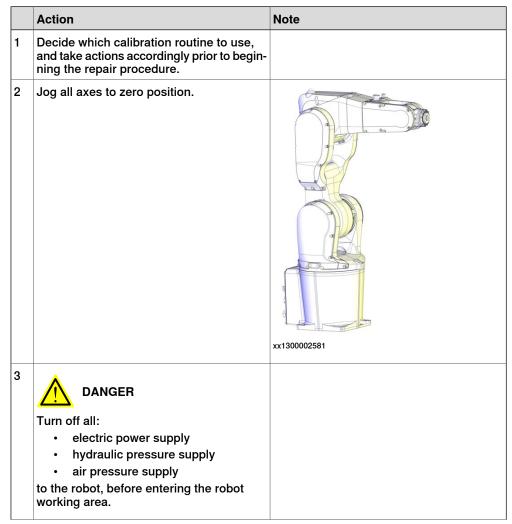
4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit *Continued*

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration:	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant
Find previous reference values for the axis	
or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair proced-	o 1 1 <i>j</i>
ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot.	Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i>
If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	routine on page 824.
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the EIB/SMB unit

Use these procedures to remove the EIB/SMB unit.

Preparations before removing the EIB/SMB unit



	Action	Note
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
5	Remove the lower arm cable housing cover.	
		xx1300002400

Disconnecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned	
2	off.	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	

	Action	Note
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
4	Remove the EIB/SMB cover attachment screws on the lower arm and carefully open the cover. CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors and lugs are disconnected, as shown in following step.	xx130002427
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the connectors on the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm. Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A	R2.EIB R1.ME1-3
	Disconnect the lugs on the EIB/SMB cover.	xx1300002428

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	x170000004
8	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm.	R2.SMB

Removing the EIB unit (IRB 1200 no type specified and IRB 1200 Type A)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	

	Action	Note
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
4	Disconnect the battery cable.	xx130002571
5	Remove the battery pack plate by removing the screws.	<image/> <image/>

Action	Note
6 Remove the EIB unit by removing the distance screws.	х×130002573

Removing the SMB unit (IRB 1200 Type B)

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
3		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
	paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!	

	Action	Note
4	Disconnect the battery cable.	хх170000006
5	Remove the battery pack plate by removing the screws.	хх170000008
6	Remove the SMB unit by removing the distance screws.	<image/> <image/>

Refitting the EIB/SMB unit

Use these procedures to refit the EIB/SMB unit.

Refitting the EIB unit (IRB 1200 no type specified and IRB 1200 Type A)

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
3	Refit the EIB unit with the distance screws.	
		xx1300002573

4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the battery pack plate with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
		xx1300002572
5	Reconnect the battery cable.	xx1300002571

Refitting the SMB unit (IRB 1200 Type B)

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
3	Refit the SMB unit with the distance screws.	
		xx170000009
4	Refit the battery pack plate with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
		xx170000008
5	Reconnect the battery cable.	x17000006

4.3.4 Replacing the EIB/SMB unit *Continued*

Connecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the EIB/SMB cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on EIB/SMB cover: 3HAC056728-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080706-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
		xx1400000475

	Action	Note
4	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.EIB R1.ME1-3
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the lugs to the EIB/SMB cover.	xx1300002428
6	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R1.ME3.6 R1.ME3.6 R1.ME1.2.4.5
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
		C C

	Action	Note
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm
9	Refit the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	replace them with other screws. Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygienic robots) Image: Comparison of the compari
2	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
3	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

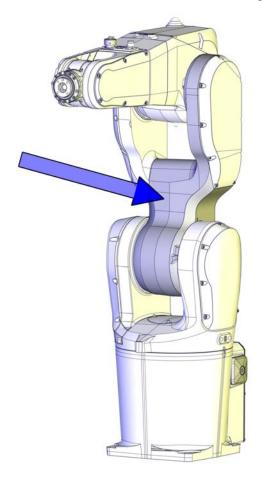
	Action	Note
4	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
6	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in sec- tion <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
7	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.4 Upper and lower arms

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm

Location of the lower arm

The lower arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx1400000423

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Lower arm (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC059687-001	Includes guide pin.

315

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Lower arm, Clean Room (IRB 1200-7/0.7) Lower arm, food grade lubrica-	3HAC059704-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade
tion (IRB 1200-7/0.7)		lubrication.
Lower arm, Hygienic (IRB 1200- 7/0.7)		Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes guide pin.
Lower arm (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC059688-001	Includes guide pin.
Lower arm, Clean Room (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC059705-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Lower arm, food grade lubrica- tion (IRB 1200-5/0.9)		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Lower arm, Hygienic (IRB 1200- 5/0.9)		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
MO verienal enables		Includes guide pin.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-005	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Cable bauging of the laws game		
Cable housing of the lower arm Cable housing of the lower arm,		Replace if damaged. Used with protection type Clean
Clean Room	511A0050105-001	Room.
Cable housing of the lower arm, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Cable housing of the lower arm, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Gasket on lower arm cable	3HAC044895-001 /	Replace if damaged.
housing	3HAC080696-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-006	Used with protection class IP67.
WE vansea sealing		Used with protection type Foundry Plus.
		Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing	3HAC024865-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC081398-001	Used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC044677-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC045688-001 / 3HAC080697-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket of plastic plate	3HAC044894-001 / 3HAC080695-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Lower arm cover	3HAC059689-001	Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Lower arm cover, Clean Room Lower arm cover, food grade lubrication Lower arm cover, Hygienic	3HAC056136-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on lower arm cover	3HAC056725-001 / 3HAC080703-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Cable housing of the swing	3HAC059677-001	Replace if damaged.
Cable housing of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing of the swing, Hy- gienic	3HAC056213-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing	3HAC059678-001	Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic	3HAC056214-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056726-001 / 3HAC080704-001	Not used for robots with protec- tion class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-003	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-004	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-41	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
O-ring	3HAC048939-001	Replace if damaged.
Swing cover	3HAC059676-001	Replace if damaged.
Swing cover, Clean Room Swing cover, food grade lubrica- tion Swing cover, Hygienic	3HAC056215-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Gasket on swing cover	3HAC056727-001 / 3HAC080705-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Cable harness material set	3HAC049663-001	Includes brackets, sheets, dis- tance screws, plastics, cable clamp, seal bolts and air protec- tion in tubular.
Housing small cover	3HAC059684-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic	3HAC056142-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Replace if damaged. Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
PTFE film on cable housing cover	3HAC044660-001	Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes gasket (3HAC078804- 001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.

Required tools and equipment

i

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit	3HAC049704-001	Always use three guide pins together!
Guide pin for upper arm	3HAC049705-001	Always use three guide pins together!
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas.
Grease	3HAC029132-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas for robots with food grade lubrication and robots in protection type Hygienic.
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation For robots with protection class IP67
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Trans Clear
Sealalli	3HAG073310-001	For robots with protection type Hygienic

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the lower arm

Use this procedure to remove the lower arm.

Preparations before removing the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	x130002581

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm Continued

	Action	Note
3		
	Turn off all:	
	electric power supply	
	hydraulic pressure supply	
	air pressure supply	
	to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i>	
	on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Action		Note
Remove the cov removing their s	ers on each side of the wrist by crews.	
For robots with The two front sc (encircled in the locking liquid. The tubular cove	protection class IP67 protection type Foundry Plus rews on the left hand side cover figure) have been fitted with er (left hand side cover) has two d washers, as encircled in the	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Note		For robots with protection type Clean Room
For robots with The tubular cove	protection type Clean Room food grade lubrication er (left hand side cover) has two d washers, as encircled in the	xx1600001148
The tubular cove extra screws, as remove the two s The screws are u	protection type Hygienic er (right hand side cover) has two encircled in the figure. Do not ecrews when removing the cover. used for blocking the screw holes the cover to the tubular. Replace issing.	For robots with protection type Hygienic
		xx2100001406

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. • R3.MP5	Here and the second sec
	• R3.ME5	
	Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002360

Disconnecting the axis-5 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xt130002390

Disconnecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1400000738
4	If equipped, disconnect the CP/CS connector.	xx150000252

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

s-4	FPC connectors	
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xt130002400
4	Remove the plate.	x130002413

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	x130002398

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	x130000456

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx130002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	x130002495

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	xt1300002420

Removing the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the	
	paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the screw that fastens the air hose hold- er.	
		xx1300002422

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	xx130002421
5	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	xx1300002423
6	Pull out the fix sheet a bit, to access the screws that fasten the cable bracket to the sheet. Loosen the bracket from the sheet by removing the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx130002424
7	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Cut the cable straps at the bottom of the housing.	

Disconnecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
3	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
4	Remove the EIB/SMB cover attachment screws on the lower arm and carefully open the cover. CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors and lugs are disconnected, as shown in following step.	
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the connectors on the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm.	R2.EIB
6	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the lugs on the EIB/SMB cover.	xx1300002428

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	x170000004
8	 Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. R1.ME1,2,4,5 R1.ME3,6 R2.SMB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm. 	R1.ME1,2,4,5 xx170000005

Removing the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Pull the cable package out from the upper arm housing.	

	Action	Note
4	Remove the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	xt130002426
5	Pull out the cable package a bit from the lower arm and remove the bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx1300002430
6	Cut the cable strap that holds the cabling together inside the EIB/SMB cavity.	xx1400001130
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Removing the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 173</i> .	xx160000205

	Action	Note
8	Remove the swing cable housing cover by remov- ing the screws.	x130002431
9	Cut the cable straps.	x1400001528
10	Remove the axis-2 motor bracket screws.	xt130002432

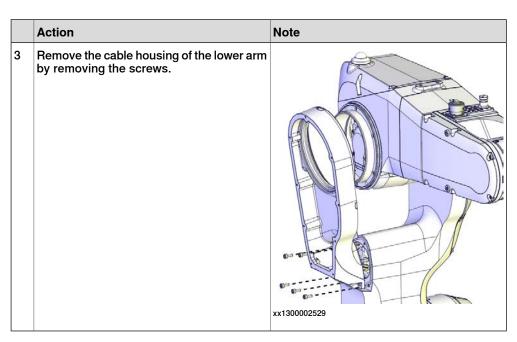
	Action	Note
11	Pull out the cabling and then remove the axis-2 motor bracket from the cable package by remov- ing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xt1300002433
12	Disconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Loosen the cable housing from the swing by re- moving the screws. Leave it hanging on the cable package.	
		xx1300002435

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
14	Remove the axis-2 sealing ring by removing the screws.	xx140000020
15	Pull out the cable package from the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
16	Loosen the plastic plate from the cable housing in order to facilitate continued removal of the cable package .	xx140000023

Removing the lower arm cable housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	



Removing the upper arm

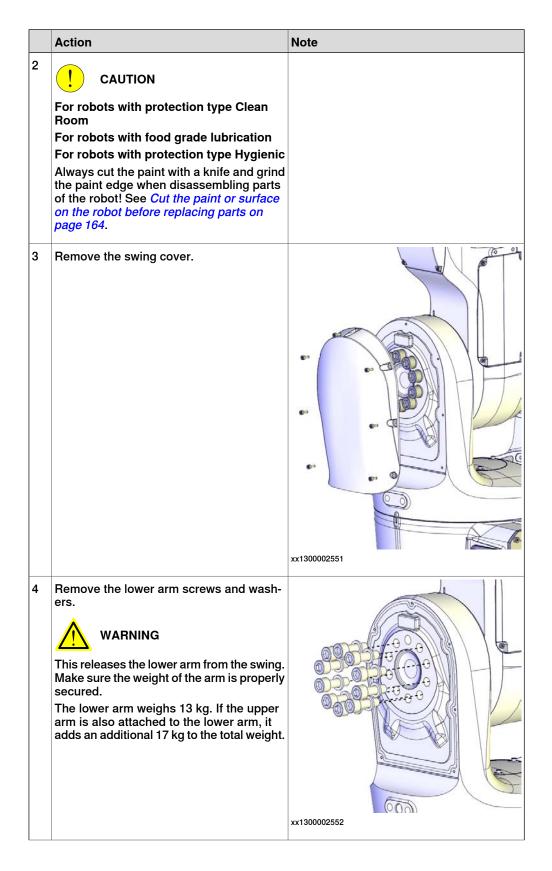
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	page 164.	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the lower arm cover.	xx130002528
4	CAUTION The upper arm weighs 17 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!	
5	Fit lifting slings to the upper arm to support the weight of the arm. (no force)	
6	Remove the upper arm screws. WARNING This releases the upper arm from the lower arm. Make sure the weight of the upper arm is properly secured by the lifting slings.	xt130002531

	Action	Note
7	Fit guide pins to the upper arm.	Guide pin for upper arm: 3HAC049705-001 Always use three guide pins together!
8	Separate the upper and lower arm with guidance from the guide pins.	xx130002533

Removing the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	



	Action	Note
5	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001 Always use three guide pins together!
6	Separate the lower arm from the swing. Tip If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the swing, two of the lower arm screws can be refitted in their attachment holes. Leave some space between the screw head and the swing casting. Then use a plastic hammer to knock on the screws lightly and evenly.	

Removing the axis-2 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

341

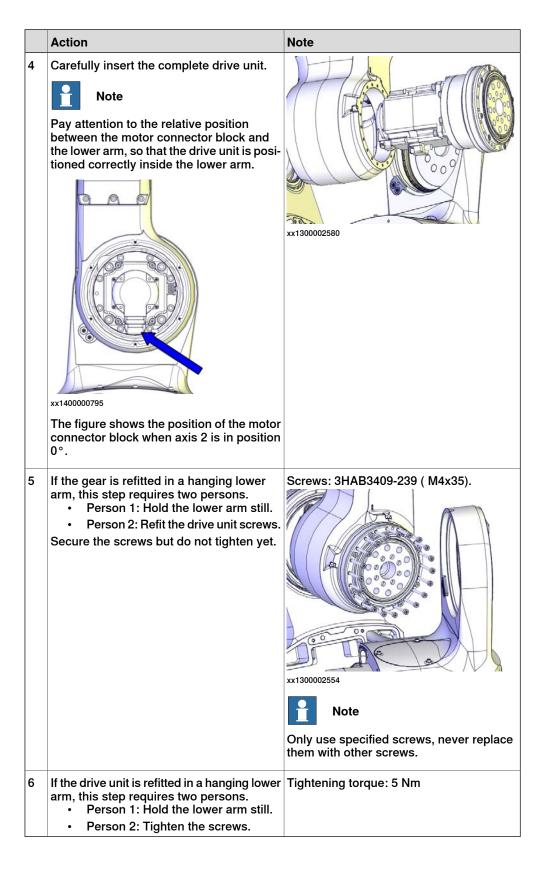
	Action	Note
3	CAUTION The lower and upper arms together weigh 30 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!	
4	If there is enough space on the site, lay down the lower arm on a workbench. Make sure to support the gravity center of the lower arm. If the site is cramp, the procedure can be performed having the lower arm hanging in the lifting slings. If removing the axis-2 drive unit from a hanging lower arm, it is best performed by two persons working together: • Person 1: Hold the lower arm still. • Person 2: Remove the drive unit screws according to step below.	
5	Remove the grey screws from the drive unit. WARNING Keep the eight black screws fitted. They hold the gearbox together. Removing them can damage the gearbox severely.	xx1300002554
6	Insert two M4 screws to the press out holes and press out the drive unit.	xx140000008
7	Carefully pull out the complete drive unit.	xx1300002555

Refitting the lower arm

Use these procedures to refit the lower arm.

Refitting the axis-2 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check if there is a sufficient amount of grease on the gear. Apply more grease, if needed.	Harmonic grease 4B No. 2: 3HAC037302- 001 For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-0: 3HAC043771-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the lower arm.	xx140000006



Refitting the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check the o-ring. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAC048939-001
3	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 to the cyl- indrical surface in the swing. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Wipe clean the overflowing Loctite 574 if there is any.	x140001403

	Action	Note
4	Fit guide pins to the gearbox. For robots with protection class IP67	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	x140000453
6	Fit the lower arm to the swing, with guid- ance from the guide pins.	x130002563

	Action	Note
7	Refit the lower arm screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243. Secure the screws but do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-51 (M10x30).
		Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
8	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing screws and washers using locking li- quid Loctite 243.	xx130002565
9	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 45 Nm

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the swing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on swing cover: 3HAC056727-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080705-001 (Hygienic robots)
		xx140000007
11	Refit the swing cover. Replace if damaged.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Swing cover: 3HAC059676-001 Swing cover, Clean Room Swing cover, food grade lubrication Swing cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056215-001

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
12	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24
13	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the swing cover. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
14	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit two screws for protection.	x1600001154

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Refitting the upper arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Fit guide pins to the axis-3 gear unit.	Guide pin for upper arm: 3HAC049705-001 Always use three guide pins together!
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-005

	Action	Note
4	Refit the upper arm to the lower arm and secure with the upper arm screws and washers. Do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-213 (M4x25).
5	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing screws and washers.	xx140000029
6	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Gasket on lower arm cover: 3HAC056725- 001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080703- 001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the lower arm cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000047
8	Refit the lower arm cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
9	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Gasket on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044895-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080696-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the cable housing gasket. Replace if damaged.	
10	For robots with protection class IP67	xx1400000414 M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-006
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Radial sealing: 3HAC024865-001
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the axis-3 radial sealing and the M2 variseal sealing in the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	
	Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots.	
	Note	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	xx1400000473
	For robots with food grade lubrication	Replacement is detailed in <i>Replacing the</i>
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring on page 425.

	Action	Note
11	Refit the cable housing of the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 3 Nm
12	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the cable housing of the lower arm. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint. Note No sealing is required in the cavities of the three lower screws highlighted with a ring in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
13	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit two screws for protection.	x1600001155

Refitting the cable package in the lower arm

скад	kage in the lower arm		
	Action	Note	
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.		
2	Check the axis-2 sealing ring. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC081398- 001 (for robots in IP40) / 3HAC044677-001 (for robots not in IP40) Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC045688-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080697-001 (Hygien- ic robots)	
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing plastic plate. Replace if damaged.	Gasket of plastic plate: 3HAC044894-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080695-001 (Hygien- ic robots)	

	Action	Note
4	Fetch the cable housing, the plastic plate and the axis-2 sealing ring and run the cable package through them.	xx140000025
5	Fasten the plastic plate to the cable housing, if removed. Replace if damaged.	The plastic plate is included in: Cable harness material set: 3HAC049663-001.

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 004

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replace- ment.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-41
8	Guide the cable package into the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
9	Refit the axis-2 sealing ring with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
10	Refit the cable housing with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10).
		Tightening torque: 3 Nm.
		1 Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
11	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000481

	Action	Note
12	Reconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the cable pack- age with the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Contraction of the second
14	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the motor.	xx1300002432

	Action	Note
15	Secure the connector R2.MP2 and its cable with cable straps onto the motor bracket. Make sure the connector is fixed by its tab to the bracket.	x1400001529
16	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000482
17	 In order to keep the cabling away from the hot axis-2 motor, the cable package must be secured accordingly inside the EIB/SMB cavity: 1 The cable package is strapped with tape by the supplier at two locations. Put a cable strap around the cable package at each location. 2 Insert a third cable strap through the top strap and the bottom strap, and close the strap to secure the cable package and keep it in place. See the figure. 	

	Action	Note
18	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056726-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080704-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
19	Check the PTFE film. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
20	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and to the PTFE film surface.	

	Action	Note
21	Action Refit the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged. Note Remember to refit the two lower screws shown in the figure.	Note Cable housing cover of the swing: 3HAC059678-001 Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic : 3HAC056214-001 Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
22	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
23	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Refit the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Refitting the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 174</i> .	Swing sealing plug:3HAC053687- 001
24	Refit the lower arm bracket to the cable package. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Connecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe	
	the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the EIB/SMB cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on EIB/SMB cover: 3HAC056728-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080706-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
4	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.EIB
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the lugs to the EIB/SMB cover.	xx1300002428
6	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.SMB

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
		xx1700000004
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima

Action	Note
9 Refit the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Refitting the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Before guiding the cable package into the housing and upper arm, apply grease to the cable package, to the area going into the upper arm, shown in the figure. Cover all moving area of the package.	cable package already fitted to the

	Action	Note
3	Guide the cable package into the upper arm, through the housing. Note Guide the air hoses (A) underneath the bottom side of the axis-3 motor and the axis-3 motor cables (B) on top of the motor, see cable layout figure. The fix point of the air hoses is pre-determined (marked) and must be matched against the air hose holder on the left side of the axis-3 motor. Note Note Note	xx1400001472
4	Refit the bracket to the sheet with two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
6	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
7	Fit the air hose holder to the bracket. Replace the holder, if damaged. Tip If the air hose holder is difficult to fit, firstly remove the bracket from the fix sheet by removing the two M3 screws. Fit the holder to the bracket and then refit the complete assembly to the fix sheet again. Tightening torque for the two M3 screws: 1.5 Nm.	Air hose holders are included in Cable harness material set (3HAC049663-001). Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
8	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xt30002420

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000754
10	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9	
	Secure the cable package at the bottom of the housing with cable straps.	

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx1300002371

	Action	Note
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xt130002494

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	
		xx1300002399

	Action	Note
3	Reconnect the FPC connectors and push them into place inside the housing. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	x1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Act	tion	Note
For For For For For Apj	fit the cable housing cover. r robots with protection class IP67 r robots with protection type Foundry Plus r robots with protection type Clean Room r robots with food grade lubrication r robots with protection type Hygienic uply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws curing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001

	Action	Note
3	 If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the gasket. Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574. 	xx1500000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling:	Plate without connector set: 3HAC078810-001
	Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
	Replace if damaged.	xx2100001433
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	x140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket. Replace if damaged.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001 Gasket: 3HAC078804-001

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xt1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx130002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

379

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	xx1300002349
	For robots with protection type Clean	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	For robots with food grade lubrication
		Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
	Note	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

4.4.1 Replacing the lower arm *Continued*

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
		xx1400000477
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Reconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then secure the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

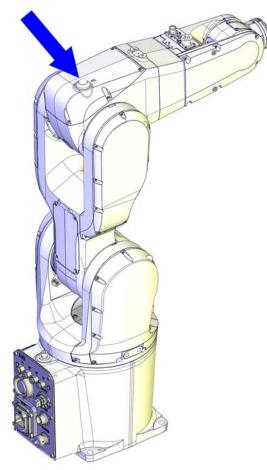
	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
	the upper arm housing cover.	Sealant, Trans Clear
	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint.	
	If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	
		xx1600000215
		XX160000215
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.
6		
	Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.4.2 Replacing the signal lamp

4.4.2 Replacing the signal lamp

Location of signal lamp

The signal lamp is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300000455

Required spare parts

hote

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Signal lamp	3HAC16738-1	
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit		Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Replacing the signal lamp

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before repla- cing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the attachment screws of the upper arm housing cover and lift the cover carefully until the connectors of the signal lamp can be reached.	xx130000456
4	Disconnect the connectors and remove the cover from the robot.	
5	Remove the nut from the lamp and pull out the lamp from the cover.	
6	Fit the new lamp to the cover and tighten the nut.	
7	 Find the lamp connectors in the cable harness inside the upper arm housing. Connect lamp connector R3.H1 to cable harness connector H1. Connect lamp connector R3.H2 to cable harness connector H2. 	

4.4.2 Replacing the signal lamp *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Clean the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut</i> the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164	
9	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200- 7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hy- gienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200- 5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hy- gienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
10	Refit the cover on the upper arm housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
11	The signal lamp is now ready for use and is lit in MOTORS ON mode.	
12	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot</i> <i>before replacing parts on page 164</i> . Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts

Location of tubular spare parts

The tubular parts that are considered spare parts are located as shown in the figure.

Tubular with sleeve	Tubular cover	Tubular cable hous- ing	Tubular cable hous- ing cover
xx140000432	xx140000433	xx140000434	xx140000435
3HAC059693-001 / 3HAC059723-001 ⁱ :	3HAC049656-001	3HAC059695-001	3HAC059694-001
3HAC059706-001: Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrica- tion.	3HAC056144-001 / 3HAC059708-001 ⁱⁱ : Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrica- tion. Replace if damaged.	3HAC056143-001: Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrica- tion.	3HAC056145-001: Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrica- tion. Replace if damaged.
3HAC079693-001: Used with protection type Hygienic.	3HAC079689-001: Used with protection type Hygienic. Replace if damaged.	3HAC079692-001: Used with protection type Hygienic.	3HAC079690-001: Used with protection type Hygienic. Replace if damaged.

For information on which tubular to be ordered, see *Spare part versions for the tubular on Type A robots on page 889*.

ii For information on which tubular cover for Clean Room robots to be ordered, see Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots on page 890.

Required spare parts



i

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note	
Tubular with sleeve	3HAC059693-001 / 3HAC059723-001 ⁱ		
Tubular with sleeve, Clean Room	3HAC059706-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.	
Tubular with sleeve, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.	
Tubular with sleeve, Hygienic	3HAC079693-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.	

387

Spare part	Article number	Note
Tubular cover	3HAC049656-001	Replace if damaged.
Tubular cover, Clean Room Tubular cover, food grade lubric- ation	3HAC056144-001 / 3HAC059708-001 ⁱⁱ	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Replace if damaged.
Tubular cover, Hygienic	3HAC079689-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Tubular cable housing	3HAC059695-001	
Tubular cable housing, Clean Room Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication	3HAC056143-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Tubular cable housing, Hygienic	3HAC079692-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-009	Used with protection class IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing	3HAB3701-42	Not used with protection class IP40 and protection type Hygien- ic. Replace if damaged.
Tubular cable housing cover	3HAC059694-001	Replace if damaged.
Tubular cable housing cover, Clean Room Tubular cable housing cover, food grade lubrication	3HAC056145-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Replace if damaged.
Tubular cable housing cover, Hygienic	3HAC079690-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Washer	3HAC044869-001	Replace if damaged
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-008	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.

ⁱ For information on which tubular to be ordered, see *Spare part versions for the tubular on Type A robots on page 889.*

ii For information on which tubular cover for Clean Room robots to be ordered, see Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots on page 890.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note	
Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049701-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.	
Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5)	3HAC049706-001	Always use three guide pins together!	
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.	
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ	
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .	
Flange tightening tool	3HAC079686-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic Used for loosen and tighten the seal ring unit on tool flange of the Hygienic robots.	
Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange	3HAC079684-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic	

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

i

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	3HAC026759-003	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots not with protection type Hygienic
Flange sealing	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Grease	3HAC070875-001	Molykote P1900
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Preparations before removing the tubular spare parts

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	<image/>

	Action	Note
3		
	Turn off all:	
	electric power supply	
	 hydraulic pressure supply 	
	air pressure supply	
	to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Replacing the tubular cable housing

Use these procedures to replace the tubular cable housing.

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

Action	Note
Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with locking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace if damaged or missing.	
	xx2100001406

Removing the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390
4	Remove the connector plate by first removing the screws.	xx1300002391
5	Remove the cable housing of the tubular by first removing the screws. Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic The frame is glued and needs to be pried off.	xx1300002392

Checking the tubular cable housing sealings

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-009
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	Radial sealing: 3HAB3701-42
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the tubular cable housing.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049701-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the tubular cable housing with the six screws M6x40.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	<image/>
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the tubular cable housing. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the overflowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Action Refit the tubular cable housing with the screws.	Note Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Tubular cable housing: 3HAC059695-001 Tubular cable housing, Clean Room Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication : 3HAC056143-001 Tubular cable housing, Hygienic: 3HAC079692-001
		xx130002392

Refitting the connector plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the connector plate and secure with the M3 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

	Action	Note
3	Secure the three M2.5 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
		x140001402

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with	
	spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xt130002390

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67	For robots with protection class IP67
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	x130002349
	For robots with protection type Clean	For robots with protection type Clean
	Room	Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		xx1600001153
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
	Note	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

Removing the tubular

Use these procedures to remove the tubular.

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

1	Action	Note
	Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
F 	Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with ocking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
F	Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
۲ e r r r	Note For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace f damaged or missing.	For robots with protection type Hygienic

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	
	Тір	
	Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002360

Removing the axis-5 motor with pulley

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	x130002350

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	Remove the timing belt.	xx130002351
5	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xt130002390
6	Remove the screws and pull out the motor.	xx1300002352

Removing the wrist

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the connectors shown in the figure.	xx1300002353
4	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1300002355
5	Remove the connector plate attachment screws.	xx1300002356

	Action	Note
6	Guide the hoses through the plate hole and re- move the plate.	xx130002357
7	Support the weight of the wrist and remove the screws and the washer.	хx130002358
8	Pull out the wrist carefully while at the same time pulling all connectors and the air hoses out of the wrist. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	xx1300002359

Separating the tilt unit from the tubular

	Action	Note
	ACUON	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the cable housing of the tubular by first removing the screws. Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic The frame is glued and needs to be pried off.	x140000774
4	Support the weight of the tilt unit and remove the screws.	xx130002469
5	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5): 3HAC049706-001 Always use three guide pins togeth- er!

	Action	Note
6	Remove the tilt unit.	xx130002470

Refitting the tubular

Use these procedures to refit the tubular.

Checking the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check the gasket (A), seal ring unit (B) and stainless shaft (C) on the tool flange. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	A B C
		xx2100001448
3	Remove the screws and washers.	xx2100001449

	Action	Note
4	Insert two M4 screws to the pressed out holes and press out the stainless shaft.	
		xx2100001450
		xx2100001451
5	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and loosen the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001
		xx2100001452
6	Remove the gasket and seal ring unit.	
		xx2100001453
7	Replace the damaged parts with new ones.	

	Action	Note
8	Apply a little grease to the screw thread.	Grease: Molykote P1900
		xx2100001454
9	Put the gasket in place and then screw the seal ring unit.	
		xx2100001453
		xx2100001455
10	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and tighten the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001 Tightening torque: 8 Nm
		xx2100001456

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

	Action	Note
11	Fit two guide pins to the tool flange.	Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange: 3HAC079684-001
12	Place the stainless shaft on the tool flange with guidance of the two guide pins. Make sure the pin hole on the shaft aligned with the pin on the tool flange.	xx2100001458
13	Secure with screws and washers.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm
14	Remove the guide pins.	xx2100001460

Refitting the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection cover for turning disk and T40 variseal sealing. Replace if damaged. Note When installing, make sure the notch on the pro- tection cover is aligned with the synchronization mark on the tool flange so that the notch could be used as the synchronization mark during calibra- tion.	Protection cover for axis-6 turning disk: 3HAC044666-001 T40 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 012 ***********************************
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 008
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the drive unit. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Wipe clean the overflowing sealant if there is any.	For robots not in protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear

Continues on next page

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Fit guide pins to the axis-5 gearbox.	Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5): 3HAC049706-001
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Make sure the sealing to the tilt covers is intact before the refitting. For robots with protection type Hygienic Hygienic robots do not have tilt covers.	x160000219
		xx160000220

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	Refit the drive unit and secure with the screws and washers. Secure the screws but do not tighten yet. Note If there is glue on the screw, please clean it or replace it with a new one.	Attachment screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10).
8	Remove the guide pins and refit the remaining screws and washers.	xx130002570
9	Cross-tighten all the screws with torque 1 Nm first, then with 2 Nm, with 4 Nm, and finally with 4.5 Nm.	

Checking the tubular cable housing sealings

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-009
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	Radial sealing: 3HAB3701-42
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the tubular cable housing.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049701-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the tubular cable housing with the six screws M6x40.	

Continues on next page

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X

	Action	Note
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	<image/> <image/>
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the tubular cable housing. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the overflowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the tubular cable housing with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		Tubular cable housing: 3HAC059695-001
		Tubular cable housing, Clean Room
		Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication
		: 3HAC056143-001
		Tubular cable housing, Hygienic: 3HAC079692-001
		xx1300002392

Refitting the wrist

Action	Note
For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
Put the connectors and air hoses into the wrist carefully while at the same time refitting the wrist to the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors.	xx130002359
Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	
x1300002611	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. Put the connectors and air hoses into the wrist carefully while at the same time refitting the wrist to the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	Refit the washer while at the same time putting the cables through its center. Replace washer, if damaged.	Washer: 3HAC044869-001
4	Refit the screw M6x35 (1 pc). Do not tighten yet.	Screw: 3HAB3409-238 (M6x35 (1 pc)).
		Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
5	Refit the rest of the screws (M5x35 (7 pcs)).	Screw: 3HAB3409-237 (M5x35 (7 pcs)).
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
		-

Continues on next page

4.4.3 Replacing the tubular spare parts *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Put the cables through the plate hole and refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
8	Reconnect the air hoses. CAUTION Make sure to connect the air hoses correctly, ac- cording to the marking on hoses and connectors.	xx1300002355
9	Reconnect the connectors. • R3.Eth • R3.CPCS	xx1300002353

Preparations before securing the axis-5 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. 	

	Action	Note
3	Place the motor at its mounting position and fasten the attachment screws and washers just enough to still be able to move the motor.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16).

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx130002351
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	Note Do not strech the timing belt too much!

	Action	Note
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	xx1300002350
		Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

Refitting the connector plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the connector plate and secure with the M3 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
3	Secure the three M2.5 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	хх1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

421

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		e ⁻ U xx1300002349
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with food grade lubrication Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	x1600001153
		Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
	Note	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

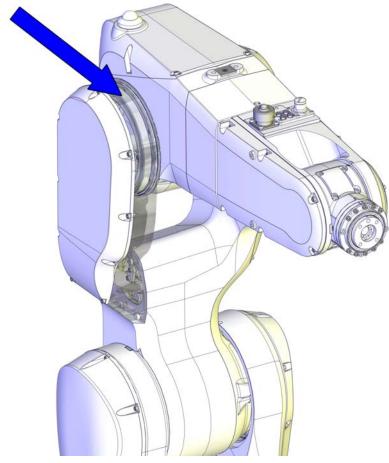
Concluding procedures

		Action	Note
	1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
		For robots with food grade lubrication	
		For robots with protection type Hygienic	
		Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
		Note	
		After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
:	2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
:	3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met	
		when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 118.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring

Location of the sealings

The axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring are located as shown in the figure.



xx1400000336

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Radial sealing	3HAC024865-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-006	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X Continues on next page

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-3 sealing ring	3HAC081399-001	Used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-3 sealing ring	3HAC044678-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on lower arm cable housing	3HAC044895-001 / 3HAC080696-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Cable harness material set	3HAC049663-001	Includes brackets, sheets, dis- tance screws, plastics, cable clamp, seal bolts and air protec- tion in tubular.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes gasket (3HAC078804- 001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Axis-3 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049697-001	Used to refit the axis-3 radial sealing.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring
Continued

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Sealant	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the sealings

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 radial sealing and/or axis-3 sealing ring.

Preparations before removing the sealings

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	<image/>
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
5	Remove the wrist cover.	xx130002389

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Disconnecting the axis-5 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390

Disconnecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	If equipped, disconnect the CP/CS connector.	x150000252

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xt130002400
4	Remove the plate.	x130002413

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 : with the second
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	х130002398

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xt1300000456

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx1300002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002495

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	x130002420

Removing the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the screw that fastens the air hose hold- er.	xx130002422

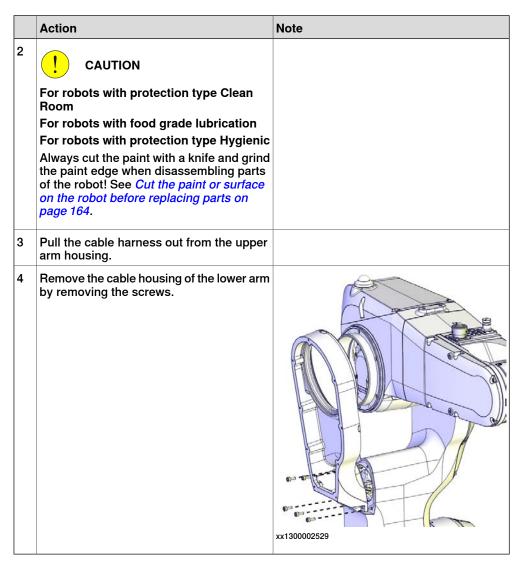
4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	xx130002421
5	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	xx1300002423
6	Pull out the fix sheet a bit, to access the screws that fasten the cable bracket to the sheet. Loosen the bracket from the sheet by removing the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xt130002424
7	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Cut the cable straps at the bottom of the housing.	

Removing the lower arm cable housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

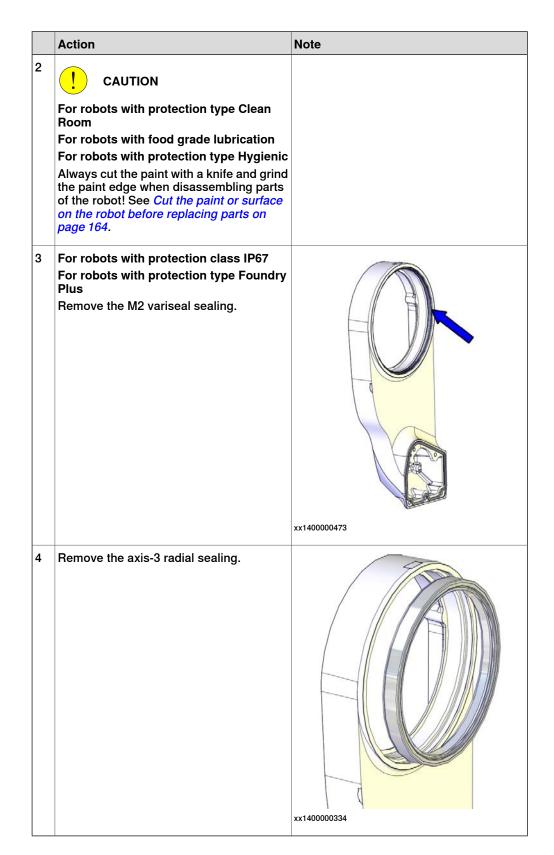
4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*



Removing the axis-3 radial sealing

Use this procedure if the axis-3 radial sealing is to be removed.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	



Removing the axis-3 sealing ring

Use this procedure if the axis-3 sealing ring is to be removed.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the screws.	
		xx1400000332

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Use screws in the two press out holes to press the sealing ring out.	x140000333

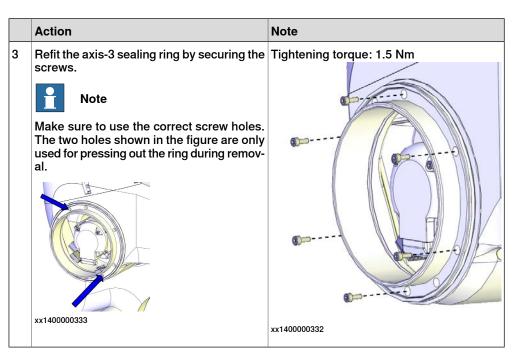
Refitting the sealings

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 radial sealing and/or axis-3 sealing ring.

Refitting the axis-3 sealing ring

Use this procedure if the axis-3 sealing ring needs to be refitted.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67	
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	
	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	
	Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the sealing ring.	



Refitting the axis-3 radial sealing

Use this procedure if the axis-3 radial sealing needs to be refitted.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replace- ment.	
3	Fit the axis-3 radial sealing to the cable housing.	Radial sealing: 3HAC024865-001

	Action	Note
4	Put the assembly tool on both sides of the cable housing, circular part against the sealing, and then slowly press the sealing into the housing by screwing the six screws (M6X50) into the plate little by little. Fit the circular part of the radial sealing fitting tool against the radial sealing.	3HAC049697-001
5	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the cable housing with the six screws M6X50.	ATE
6	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	
7	Remove the assembly tool.	
8	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Fit a new M2 variseal sealing.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 006
		xx1400000473
9	Check that the sealings are undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the lower arm cable housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67	Gasket on lower arm cable housing:
2	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	3HAC044895-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080696-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the cable housing gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000414
3	For robots with protection class IP67	Radial sealing: 3HAC024865-001
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-006
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing and the M2 variseal sealing. Replace if damaged.	
	Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots.	
	Note	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	xx1400000473
	For robots with food grade lubrication	Replacement of the radial sealing is de-
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	tailed in previous section.
	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Refit the cable housing of the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
		xx1300002529
5	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the cable housing of the lower arm.	
	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger	Sealant, Trans Clear
	tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint.	
	If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	
	Note	
	No sealing is required in the cavities of the three lower screws highlighted with a ring in the figure.	
		xx1600000218

Refitting the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Before guiding the cable package into the housing and upper arm, apply grease to the cable package, to the area going into the upper arm, shown in the figure. Cover all moving area of the package.	Area to be lubricated, shown in cable package already fitted to the housing.
3	Guide the cable package into the upper arm, through the housing. Note Guide the air hoses (A) underneath the bottom side of the axis-3 motor and the axis-3 motor cables (B) on top of the motor, see cable layout figure. The fix point of the air hoses is pre-determined (marked) and must be matched against the air hose holder on the left side of the axis-3 motor. Image: Note The air hose holder keeps the air hoses arranged in an optimized way. It is necessary to keep the air hose holder vertically and firmly against the left side of the axis-3 motor.	xx1400001472
4	Refit the bracket to the sheet with two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
5	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
6	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
7	Fit the air hose holder to the bracket. Replace the holder, if damaged. Tip If the air hose holder is difficult to fit, firstly remove the bracket from the fix sheet by removing the two M3 screws. Fit the holder to the bracket and then refit the complete assembly to the fix sheet again. Tightening torque for the two M3 screws: 1.5 Nm.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xt1300002420
9	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000754
10	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9	
	Secure the cable package at the bottom of the housing with cable straps.	

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

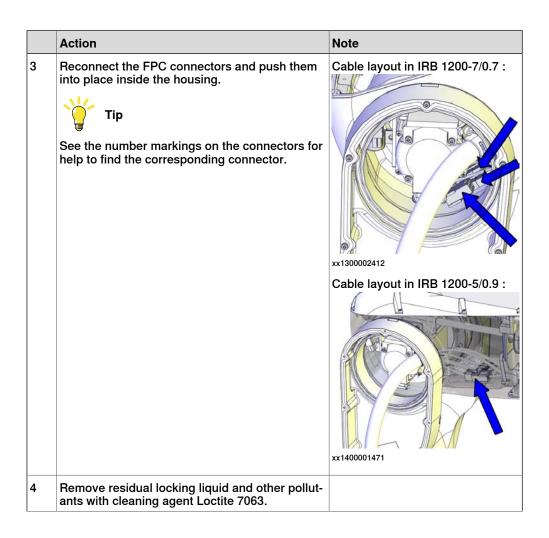
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx130002371
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xx130002494

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	xx1300002399

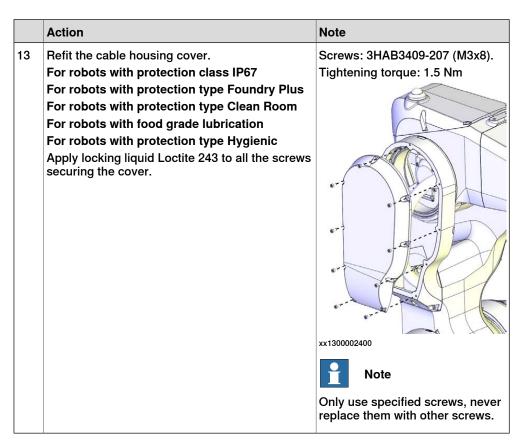


	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	x1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.4.4 Replacing the axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring *Continued*



Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001

	Action	Note
3	If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus 1 Check the gasket. 2 Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication 1 Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. 2 Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574.	xx1500000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

455

	Action	Note
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling:	Plate without connector set: 3HAC078810-001
	Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
	Replace if damaged.	xx2100001433
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket. Replace if damaged.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001 Gasket: 3HAC078804-001

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	хх130002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the tubular cable housing cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

457

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345
3	Refit the cover to the cable housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Reconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then secure the cover.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

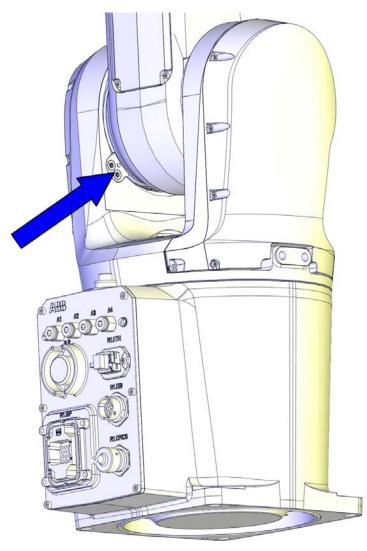
	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the upper arm housing cover. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164. Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
6	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.4.5 Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop

4.4.5 Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop

Location of the mechanical stop

The axis-2 mechanical stop is located as shown in the figure.



xx1400000389

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical stop set, axis 2		Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc) and screws.

Continues on next page

4.4.5 Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop *Continued*

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Replacing the mechanical stop

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 mechanical stop.

Preparations before removing the mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	Jog the robot to a position where the mechanical stop is most easily accessed.	
2	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

4.4.5 Replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop *Continued*

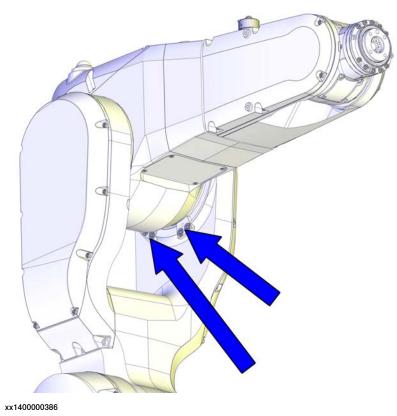
	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the mechanical stop by removing the screws.	
4	Discard the old screws.	
5	Refit and secure the new stop with the enclosed screws.	xx140000390
		Screws: 9ADA624-45 (M5x16).
		Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
		Note Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
7		
	Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.4.6 Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop

4.4.6 Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop

Location of the mechanical stop

The axis-3 mechanical stop is located as shown in the figure.



Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical stop set, axis 3	3HAC049644-001	Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc) and screws.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

4.4.6 Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop *Continued*

Replacing the mechanical stop

Use these procedures to replace the axis-3 mechanical stop.

Preparations before removing the mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	Jog the robot to a position where the mechanical stops are most easily accessed.	
2		
	 Turn off all: electric power supply hydraulic pressure supply air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area. 	
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.4.6 Replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the mechanical stop to be re- placed by removing the screws.	
4	Discard the old screws.	
5	Refit and secure the new stop with the enclosed screws.	xx140000387 Screws: 9ADA624-45 (M5x16). Tightening torque: 4 Nm Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i>	
	on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
7	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 118.	

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop

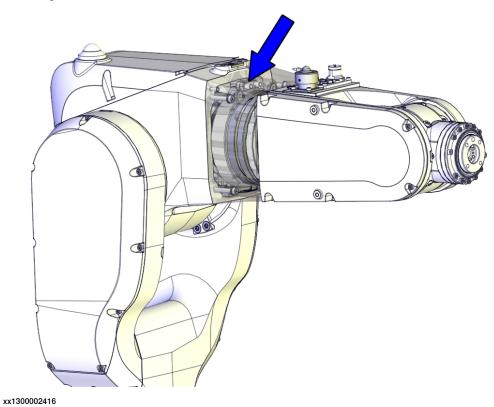
4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop



The mechanical stop needs to be inspected immediately if it gets hit. Replace the mechanical stop if damage is detected. Access to and inspection of the stop requires disassembly of the robot according to this section.

Location of the mechanical stop

The axis-4 mechanical stop is located inside the housing extender unit, as shown in the figure.



Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical stop set	3HAC049652-001	Includes mechanical stop pin, guide, slider and screws.

467

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-007	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-48	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover	3HAC059684-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing small cover, Clean Room	3HAC056142-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Housing small cover, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Housing small cover, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.
PTFE film on lower arm cable housing	3HAC044710-001	Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
PTFE film on cable housing cover	3HAC044660-001	Replace if damaged.
Washer	3HAC044869-001	Replace if damaged
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049699-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574 Used with protection class IP67 Used with protection type Foundry Plus

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the mechanical stop

Use these procedures to remove the mechanical stop.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	

	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx130002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned	
	off.	

A	ction	Note
F F A pa S	CAUTION or robots with protection type Clean Room or robots with food grade lubrication or robots with protection type Hygienic ways cut the paint with a knife and grind the aint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! ee Cut the paint or surface on the robot before oplacing parts on page 164.	
Fe Fe Ti (e lo Ti e)	emove the covers on each side of the wrist by moving their screws. Note nor robots with protection class IP67 or robots with protection type Foundry Plus the two front screws on the left hand side cover ncircled in the figure) have been fitted with cking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two thra screws and washers, as encircled in the gure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Fo Ti ex	Note or robots with protection type Clean Room or robots with food grade lubrication ne tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two ctra screws and washers, as encircled in the gure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
TI ex re TI ra	Note or robots with protection type Hygienic the tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two tra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not move the two screws when removing the cover. the screws are used for blocking the screw holes ther than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace damaged or missing.	For robots with protection type Hygienic

Continues on next page

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Removing the axis-5 motor with pulley

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	хх1300002350
4	Remove the timing belt.	xx130002351
5	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390
6	Remove the screws and pull out the motor.	xx130002352

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

Removing the wrist

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the connectors shown in the figure.	3.80 (3.80) (3.8
4	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1300002355
5	Remove the connector plate attachment screws.	xt1300002356

	Action	Note
6	Guide the hoses through the plate hole and re- move the plate.	х<130002357
7	Support the weight of the wrist and remove the screws and the washer.	хx130002358
8	Pull out the wrist carefully while at the same time pulling all connectors and the air hoses out of the wrist. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	xx1300002359

Continues on next page

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

IS-4 F	PC connectors	
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xx130002400
4	Remove the plate.	xx130002413

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	x130002398

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Removing the housing extender unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	xx1300002373
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the plugs covering the extender unit screws with a needle-nose plier.	xx160000262

	Action	Note
5	Remove the extender unit screws.	xx130002372
6	Remove the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling.	xx130002374

Removing the axis-4 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the mechanical stop assembly from the housing extender unit by removing the screws.	xx1300002415

479

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop Continued

Refitting the mechanical stop

Use these procedures to refit the mechanical stop.

Checking the housing extender sealings

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-007
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. In order to replace the radial sealing, both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit must be removed from the hous- ing extender unit, if not already removed.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-4

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the housing ex- tender unit.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049699-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the housing extender unit with the six screws M6X50.	
		xx1400000436
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	хх140000437
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	
11	Refit both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit to the housing extender unit.	

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

Refitting the axis-4 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Fit the mechanical stop screw to the axis- 4 shaft.	Screws: 3HAB3409-231 (M4x8). Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
3	Fit the mechanical stop assembly to the housing extender unit and secure with screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-216 (M5x12). Tightening torque: 4 Nm. Image: 4 Nm. Im

Refitting the housing extender unit

exter	xtender unit			
	Action	Note		
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.			
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the housing extender unit.	xt130002613		
3	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Make sure the four cavities are fully filled with glue. If not, fill glue again before the refitting.	xx1600000216		
4	Refit the housing extender unit to the housing while putting the FPC cables into the housing and the air hoses through the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling. CAUTION Make sure that the axis-4 FPC unit is in its zero position when refitting the housing extender unit. Note Mate the unit to the two locating pins attached to the housing.	xx1300002374		

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Secure with screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243.	Screws: M4x30. Tightening torque: 2.7 Nm.
6	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Press in screw sealing plugs to cover the screws.	Screw sealing plug: 3HAC053685- 001
7	Fit and secure the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	xx1300002399
3	Reconnect the FPC connectors and push them into place inside the housing. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 : With the second s
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	xx1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
13	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

Refitting the wrist

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Put the connectors and air hoses into the wrist carefully while at the same time refitting the wrist to the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors.	
		xx1300002359
	Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	
	xx1300002611	
3	Refit the washer while at the same time putting	Washer: 3HAC044869-001
	the cables through its center. Replace washer, if damaged.	x140000001
		XX 140000001

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Action Refit the screw M6x35 (1 pc). Do not tighten yet. Refit the rest of the screws (M5x35 (7 pcs)).	Note Screw: 3HAB3409-238 (M6x35 (1 pc)). xx140000002 xx140000002 Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws. Screw: 3HAB3409-237 (M5x35 (7 pcs)). Screw: 3HAB3409-237 (M5x35 (7 pcs)). xx140000003 xx140000003 Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
6	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 8 Nm.
7	Put the cables through the plate hole and refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Continues on next page

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Reconnect the air hoses.	
	Make sure to connect the air hoses correctly, ac- cording to the marking on hoses and connectors.	
		xx1300002355
9	Reconnect the connectors. • R3.Eth • R3.CPCS	3.60 (R.CPCS) xx1300002353

Preparations before securing the axis-5 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. 	
3	Place the motor at its mounting position and fasten the attachment screws and washers just enough to still be able to move the motor.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16).

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note	
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.		
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx130002351	
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	Note Do not strech the timing belt too much!	
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.		
		xx1300002350 Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.	

Refitting the connector plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.4.7 Replacing the axis-4 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the connector plate and secure with the M3 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
3	Secure the three M2.5 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xt1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	хх1300002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000345

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		e* U xx1300002349
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication
	Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		xx1600001153
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
	Note	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.
3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)

4.5 Swing and base

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)

Location of the base spare parts

The base parts that are considered spare parts are located as shown in the figure.

Base	Base, SafeMove 2-suppor- ted	Radial sealing with dust lip	Cable protection sleeve inside base
xx140000396		xx140000269	xx140000395
3HAC059553-001 Includes base machining, axis-1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with encoder in- terface. Incompatible with swing 3HAC049632-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883.	<i>page 882</i> . Includes base machining, axis-1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with resolver in-	3HAB3701-47 Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if dam- aged.	3HAC044690-001
3HAC059699-001 Used with protection type Clean Room.	3HAC061271-001 Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on</i> <i>page 882</i> . Used with protection type Clean Room.		
3HAC057906-001 Used for robots with food grade lubrication.	3HAC061272-001 Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on</i> <i>page 882</i> . Used for robots with food grade lubrication.		

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

M2 variseal sealing	Sealing ring (IP40) / Sealing ring, gasket and V-ring (IP67)
xt10000tf	<image/> <image/>
3HAC044641-002	Sealing ring: 3HAC068107-001 (IP40)
Used with protection class IP67. Used only on base 3HAC049628-001. See	Sealing ring, gasket and V-ring: 3HAC059791- 001 (IP67)
Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883. Replace if damaged.	Used with protection class IP67. Replace if damaged.

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Base	3HAC059553-001	Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with encoder interface.
		Incompatible with swing 3HAC049632-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883.
Base, Clean Room	3HAC059699-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
		Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with encoder interface.
Base, food grade lubrication	3HAC057906-001	Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with encoder interface.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

Spare part	Article number	Note
Base, SafeMove 2-supported	3HAC061270-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with resolver interface.
Base, Clean Room and Safe- Move 2-supported	3HAC061271-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used with protection type Clean Room. Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with resolver interface.
Base, food grade lubrication and SafeMove 2-supported Base, Hygienic	3HAC061272-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes base machining, axis- 1 gear unit and axis-1 AC motor with resolver interface.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-47	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-1 sealing ring gasket	3HAC045685-001	Used with protection class IP67. Only on axis-1 sealing ring ver- sion 3HAC044676-001. See Spare part versions for the axis- 1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 ro- bots on page 886. Replace if damaged.
Axis-1 sealing ring gasket	3HAC058349-001 / 3HAC080707-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Only on axis-1 sealing ring ver- sion 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001. See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886. Replace if damaged.
V-ring	3HAB3732-34	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Only on swing version 3HAC058000-001, 3HAC059554- 001 and 3HAC082506-001. See Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots on page 884. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-002	Used with protection class IP67. Used only on base 3HAC049628-001. See <i>Spare</i> <i>part versions for the base on</i> <i>IP40/IP67 robots on page 883</i> . Replace if damaged.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Sealing ring	3HAC068107-001	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Used only on base 3HAC059553-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883. Replace if damaged.
Sealing ring, gasket and V-ring	3HAC059791-001	Used with protection class IP67. Replace if damaged.
Protection plug	3HAC051199-001	Protection plug for the calibra- tion hole in the swing (the hole is used during calibration of axis 1 with the manual calibration method). Replace if damaged.
Cable protection sleeve inside base	3HAC044690-001	
O-ring	3HAB3772-86	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for rear base cover	3HAC058566-001 / 3HAC080710-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-004	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Cable harness material set	3HAC049663-001	Includes brackets, sheets, dis- tance screws, plastics, cable clamp, seal bolts and air protec- tion in tubular.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).

4.5.1	Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve))
	Continued	1

Spare part	Article number	Note
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Includes gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.
Cable bracket on swing	3HAC044925-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
Axis-1 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049692-001	Used to refit the axis-1 radial sealing.
Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit	3HAC049703-001	Always use three guide pins together!
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

i

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas.
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Grease	3HAC029132-001	Used for lubrication of cable con- tact areas for robots with food grade lubrication and robots in protection type Hygienic.
Grease	3HAC058065-001	Used for lubrication of radial sealing surface between base and swing.
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation

Continues on next page

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the cabling

Before the spare parts of the base can be removed, the cable harness must be removed from upper arm and down to the base. Use these procedures to remove the cabling in order to access the base spare parts.

Preparations before removing the cabling

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

Continues on next page

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
5	Remove the wrist cover.	xx1300002389

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Disconnecting the axis-5 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390

Disconnecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	If equipped, disconnect the CP/CS connector.	xx150000252

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xx1300002400
4	Remove the plate.	хх130002413

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)	
Continued	í.

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	хи1300002398

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xt130000456

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx130002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx130002495

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	x130002420

Removing the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the screw that fastens the air hose hold- er.	xx130002422

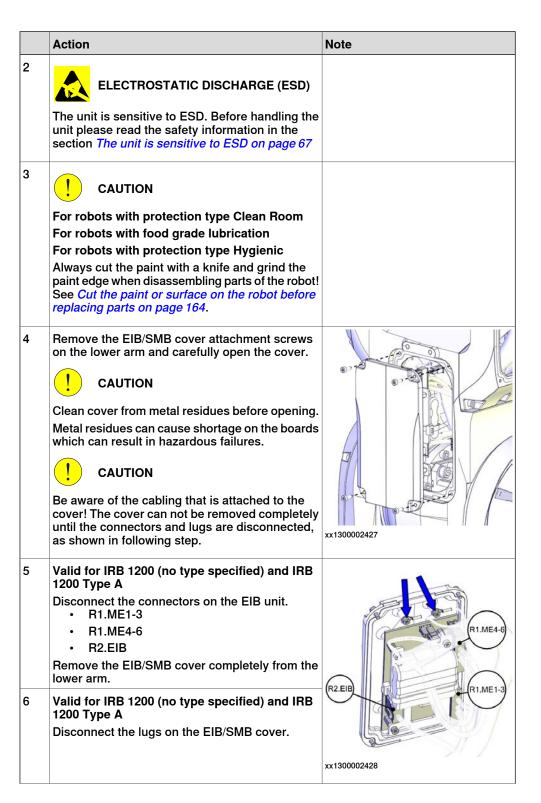
4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	xt1300002421
5	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	xt130002423
6	Pull out the fix sheet a bit, to access the screws that fasten the cable bracket to the sheet. Loosen the bracket from the sheet by removing the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx130002424
7	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Cut the cable straps at the bottom of the housing.	

Disconnecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*



4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	х170000004
8	 Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. R1.ME1,2,4,5 R1.ME3,6 R2.SMB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm. 	R2.SMB R1.ME3.6 R1.ME3.6 R1.ME1.2,4,5 xx1700000005

Removing the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Pull the cable package out from the upper arm housing.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	xt130002426
5	Pull out the cable package a bit from the lower arm and remove the bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx1300002430
6	Cut the cable strap that holds the cabling together inside the EIB/SMB cavity.	xx1400001130
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Removing the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 173</i> .	x160000205

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
8	Remove the swing cable housing cover by remov- ing the screws.	x130002431
9	Cut the cable straps.	x140001528
10	Remove the axis-2 motor bracket screws.	xx130002432

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
11	Pull out the cabling and then remove the axis-2 motor bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx1300022433
12	Disconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	x130002434
13	Loosen the cable housing from the swing by re- moving the screws. Leave it hanging on the cable package.	xt130002435

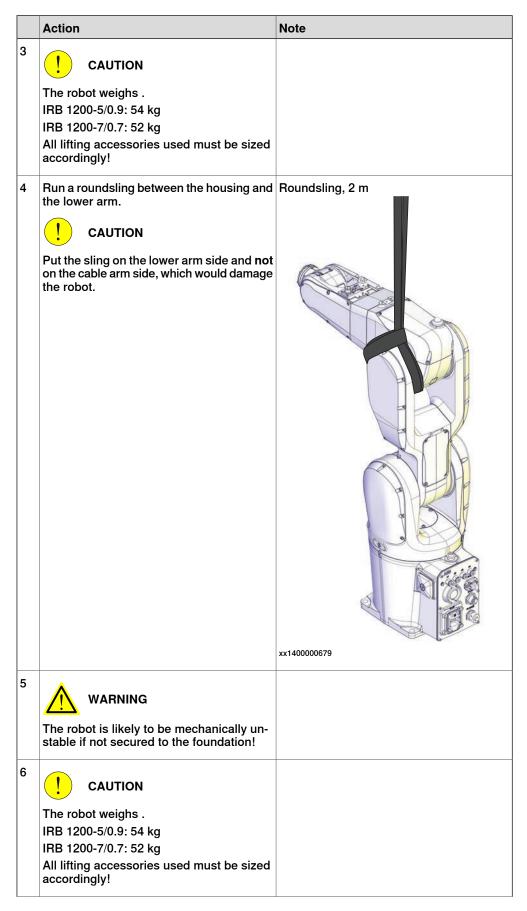
4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
14	Remove the axis-2 sealing ring by removing the screws.	x140000020
15	Pull out the cable package from the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
16	Loosen the plastic plate from the cable housing in order to facilitate continued removal of the cable package .	xx140000023

Putting the robot on its side

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*



Continues on next page

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side.	xx140000680

Separating the arm system from base

yoton	i irom base	
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the swing top cover by removing the screws. Tip Fit M4 screws in the cover holes to pull out the cover more easily. Only tighten the screws lightly in order not to damage the threads.	
		xx1300000467

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws and washers.	xx130000471
5	Pull out the base slightly and turn it aside. Tip Remember the cable layout in the base. The cabling must be positioned and angled in the same way during refitting.	xx130000472

Removing the cable package from the axis-1 sealing ring

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the axis-1 sealing ring from the swing and carefully run the cable package out from the swing.	хх130002438
4	Remove the swing (including arm system) com- pletely from the base and lay it aside on a safe location.	
5	Remove the cable bracket from the cabling, if the cable package is to be replaced with a new spare part.	xx1300002446

Replacing the radial sealing (IP67 and Foundry Plus)

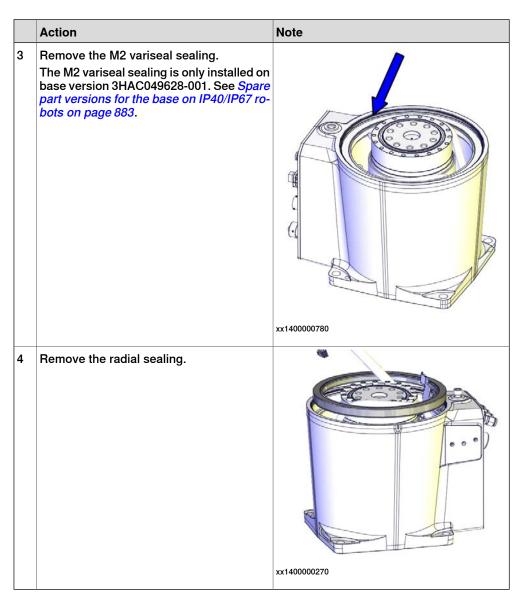
First remove the cabling according to *Removing the cabling on page 504*, then use this procedure to replace the axis-1 radial sealing.

The sealing is only used for robots with protection class IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus.

Removing the axis-1 radial sealing and M2 variseal sealing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Raise the base into standing and put most of the cable harness, including the sealing ring bracket, into the base (in the space of the protection sleeve).	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*



Refitting the axis-1 radial sealing and M2 variseal sealing

	Action	Note
1	Fit the new sealing in its groove in the base.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-47

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Put the assembly tool against the axis-1 gear and slowly press the sealing into the base by screwing the five screws (M10X35) into the axis-1 gear screws little by little.	Axis-1 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049692-001

3	Remove the assembly tool.	
4	Fit a new M2 variseal sealing in its groove in the base. The M2 variseal sealing is only installed on base version 3HAC049628-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 ro- bots on page 883. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	xx140000780 M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-002
		-

Replacing the M2 variseal sealing (IP67)

The M2 variseal sealing is only installed on base version 3HAC049628-001. See *Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots on page 883*.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

First remove the cabling according to *Removing the cabling on page 504*, then use this procedure to replace the M2 variseal sealing.



The sealing is only used for robots with protection class IP67. Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.

Replacing the axis-1 M2 variseal sealing (IP67)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the sealing.	
3	Fit the new sealing in its groove in the base. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	xx140000472
		M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-002

Replacing the cable protection sleeve

First remove the cabling according to *Removing the cabling on page 504*, then use this procedure to replace the protection sleeve.

Replacing the cable protection sleeve

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cabling from the base.	
4	Remove the screws.	xx140000776
5	Pull up the protection sleeve.	х140000777
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
7	Fit the new protection sleeve and secure with	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Apply grease on the inner surface of the protec- tion sleeve, also on the bottom surface.	xt40000778

Replacing the base

Use these procedures to replace the base.

Disconnecting the axis-1 motor connectors

Action	Note
DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
For robots with protection type Clean Room	
For robots with food grade lubrication	
For robots with protection type Hygienic	
Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i>

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the bottom cover.	Rear connector interface:
		xx1300000469
		Bottom connector interface:
		xx1400000403

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the axis-1 motor bracket.	Rear connector interface:
		xx1300000470
		Bottom connector interface:
5	Loosen the connectors from the bracket by cutting the cable straps, and disconnect the connectors.	
		xx1300002496

Removing the cable package from the base

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

Cabling with rear interface

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the rear of the base.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Open the base cover.	xx130002448
4	Disconnect the earth cable.	
5	Pull the cable package out from the base, through the rear.	xx1300002456

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Cabling with bottom interface, and cabling routed from below

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the bottom of the base and the cabling is routed from below.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Open the base cover.	xx140000405
4	Remove the brake release button from the base cover.	
5	Disconnect the earth cable.	
6	Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.	xx140000406

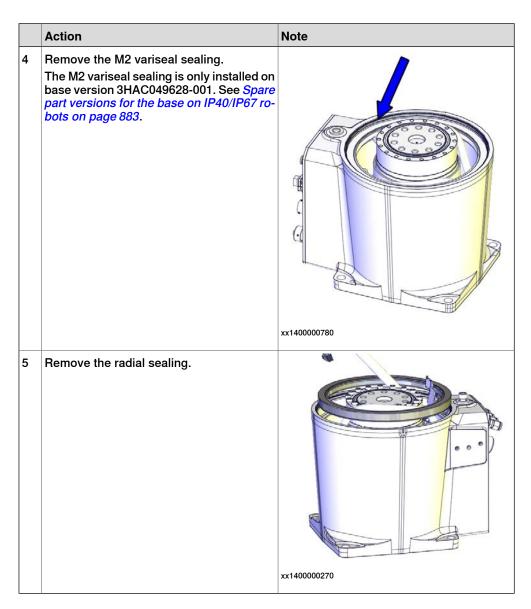
4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleev	e)
Continue	эd

	Action	Note
7	Remove the bracket inside the base by removing the screws.	xx140000407
8	Pull the cable package out from the base, through the bottom.	x140000411

Removing the axis-1 radial sealing and M2 variseal sealing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Raise the base into standing and put most of the cable harness, including the sealing ring bracket, into the base (in the space of the protection sleeve).	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*



Replacing the base

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Move the protection sleeve from the old base to	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
3	the new.	Tightering torque. 0.3 Nin.
4	Move the axis-1 mechanical stop set from the old base to the new. Replace if damaged.	Tightening torque: 12 Nm.

Refitting the axis-1 radial sealing and M2 variseal sealing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Fit the new sealing in its groove in the base.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-47
4	Put the assembly tool against the axis-1 gear and slowly press the sealing into the base by screwing the five screws (M10X35) into the axis-1 gear screws little by little.	Axis-1 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049692-001
5	Remove the assembly tool.	
-		

	Action	Note
6	Fit a new M2 variseal sealing in its groove in the base. The M2 variseal sealing is only installed on base version 3HAC049628-001. See Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 ro- bots on page 883. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	
		xx1400000780
		M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-002
7	Check that the sealings are undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the cable package to the base

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

Cabling with rear interface

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the rear of the base.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket on the base cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for rear base cover: 3HAC058566-001 (not Hygienic robots)/3HAC080710-001 (Hygien- ic robots)

Continues on next page

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Insert the cable package in and up through the base, through the rear.	
4	Reconnect the earth cable.	
5	Refit the base cover with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16). Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
6	Route the cable package inside the base as shown in the figure. Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xx140000480

Cabling with bottom interface, cabling routed from below

Use this procedure if the cable connector interface is located at the bottom of the base and the cabling is routed from below.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Insert the cable package in and up through the base, through the bottom.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Refit the bracket inside the base with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
4	Refit the cable bracket with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the base cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for rear base cover: 3HAC058566-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080710-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
6	Reconnect the earth cable.	
7	Refit the brake release button to the base cover.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Refit the base cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16). Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
9	Route the cable package inside the base as shown in the figure. Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000480

Refitting the cabling

Use these procedures to refit the cabling, after the base part in question has been replaced.

Refitting the cable package to the axis-1 sealing ring

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint	
2	free. Check the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged.	Axis-1 sealing ring: 3HAC044676- 001 / 3HAC068107-001 ⁱ

Action	Note
On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: Add sealant to the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.)	Sealant: Sikaflex 521FC.
On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC044676-001, 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: Check the gasket on the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.) Replace if damaged.	On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC044676-001: Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC045685-001 xx140000458 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001: Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC058349-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080707-001 (Hygien- ic robots) xx1600001149 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC068107-001: Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC058349-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080707-001 (Hygien- ic robots) / 3HAC080707-001 (Hygien-
	xx1900001735

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001, 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: Check the V-ring on the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.) Replace if damaged.	V-ring: 3HAB3732-34 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: xx1600001124 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001: xx1600001150 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC068107-001: xx1900001736
6	Check the cable protection on the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged. If replacing the cable protection, use locking liquid Loctite 243 on the screws.	Cable protection: 3HAC044691-001 Torx countersunk head screw M3x5: 3HAC14286-4 Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm

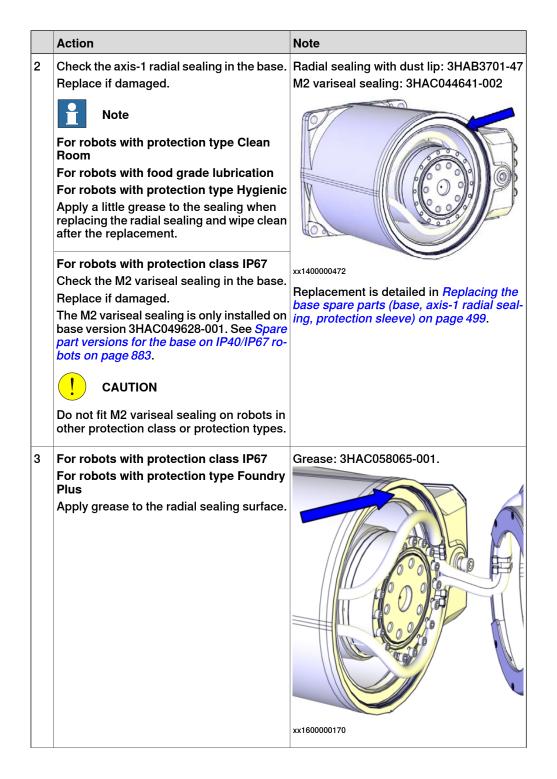
4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
7	Refit the cable bracket to the cabling, if removed. Use Loctite 243 on the screw threads.	Cable bracket on swing: 3HAC044925-001
		Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
		хх130002446
8	Refit the axis-1 sealing ring to the swing and	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	carefully run the cabling into the swing.	xx130002438

i For information on which sealing ring to be ordered, see Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.

Assembling the swing and base

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	



4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Fit the guide pins to the drive unit.	Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit: 3HAC049703-001
		xx1300002566
5	Refit the swing to the base with guidance from the guide pins while running the cabling up through the swing. Position and angle the cabling inside the base as it was positioned during removal. CAUTION Be careful not to squeeze any cabling dur- ing the refitting procedure.	
6	Secure with attachment screws and washers, but do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-52 (M10x35).

	Action	Note
7	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing attachment screws and washers.	х×130000523
8	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 40 Nm.
9	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000425

	Action	Note
10	Refit the swing top cover with the screws. Replace if damaged.	Cover on top of swing: 3HAC059679-001 Cover on top of swing, Clean Room Cover on top of swing, food grade lubrica- tion Cover on top of swing, Hygienic : 3HAC056133-001 Screws: 3HAB3409-209 (M3x20). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx130000467 Image: Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

Connecting the axis-1 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the connectors and secure the connectors to the bracket with cable straps.	
		xx1300002496
3	Refit the axis-1 motor bracket.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Rear connector interface:
		xx130000470 Bottom connector interface:

	Action	Note
4	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the O-ring. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAB3772-86
5	Refit the bottom cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Rear connector interface:
		Bottom connector interface:

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

Securing the robot to the foundation

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrica- tion For robots with protection type Hy- gienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	CAUTION The robot weighs . IRB 1200-5/0.9: 54 kg IRB 1200-7/0.7: 52 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!	
3	For robots with: protection class IP67, protection type Foundry Plus protection type Clean Room food grade lubrication with protection type Hygienic and manipulator cables routed from below Check the gasket at the bottom of the base. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAB3772-141 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Used with manipulator cables routed from be- low
4	Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers.	Attachment screws: M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 13 x 20 x 2, steel hardness class 300HV. Pin: 2 pcs, D6x20, ISO 2338 - 6m6x20 - A1. Tightening Torque: 55 Nm ± 5 Nm.

Refitting the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Check the axis-2 sealing ring. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC081398- 001 (for robots in IP40) / 3HAC044677-001 (for robots not in IP40) Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC045688-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080697-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing plastic plate. Replace if damaged.	Gasket of plastic plate: 3HAC044894-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080695-001 (Hygien- ic robots)

	Action	Note
4	Fetch the cable housing, the plastic plate and the axis-2 sealing ring and run the cable package through them.	x140000025
5	Fasten the plastic plate to the cable housing, if removed. Replace if damaged.	The plastic plate is included in: Cable harness material set: 3HAC049663-001.

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 004

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replace- ment.	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-41
8	Guide the cable package into the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
9	Refit the axis-2 sealing ring with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve)
Continued

	Action	Note
10	Refit the cable housing with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10). Tightening torque: 3 Nm.
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
11	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000481

	Action	Note
12	Reconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the cable pack- age with the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
14	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the motor.	xt1300002432

	Action	Note
15	Secure the connector R2.MP2 and its cable with cable straps onto the motor bracket. Make sure the connector is fixed by its tab to the bracket.	xx1400001529
16	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xt140000482
17	 In order to keep the cabling away from the hot axis-2 motor, the cable package must be secured accordingly inside the EIB/SMB cavity: The cable package is strapped with tape by the supplier at two locations. Put a cable strap around the cable package at each location. Insert a third cable strap through the top strap and the bottom strap, and close the strap to secure the cable package and keep it in place. 	

	Action	Note
18	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056726-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080704-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
19	Check the PTFE film. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
20	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and to the PTFE film surface.	

	Action	Note
21	Action Refit the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged. Note Remember to refit the two lower screws shown in the figure.	Note Cable housing cover of the swing: 3HAC059678-001 Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic : 3HAC056214-001 Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Ightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Ightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Xx1300002431 Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
22	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24 Image: state of the sta

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
23	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Refit the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Refitting the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 174</i> .	Swing sealing plug:3HAC053687- 001
24	Refit the lower arm bracket to the cable package. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Connecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the EIB/SMB cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on EIB/SMB cover: 3HAC056728-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080706-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection. Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A	xx1300002428
6	Connect the lugs to the EIB/SMB cover. Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.SMB R1.ME3,6 R1.ME1,2,4,5 xx170000005

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
		xx1700000004
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Refit the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		XX1300002426

Refitting the cable package in the housing

a to be lubricated, shown in e package already fitted to the sing.

	Action	Note
3	Guide the cable package into the upper arm, through the housing. Note Guide the air hoses (A) underneath the bottom side of the axis-3 motor and the axis-3 motor cables (B) on top of the motor, see cable layout figure. The fix point of the air hoses is pre-determ- ined (marked) and must be matched against the air hose holder on the left side of the axis-3 motor. Note The air hose holder keeps the air hoses arranged in an optimized way. It is necessary to keep the air hose holder vertically and firmly against the left side of the axis-3 motor.	xx1400001472
4	Refit the bracket to the sheet with two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
6	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
7	Fit the air hose holder to the bracket. Replace the holder, if damaged.	Air hose holders are included in Cable harness material set (3HAC049663-001).
	Тір	Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
	If the air hose holder is difficult to fit, firstly remove the bracket from the fix sheet by removing the two M3 screws. Fit the holder to the bracket and then refit the complete assembly to the fix sheet again. Tightening torque for the two M3 screws: 1.5 Nm.	
8	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xx130002420

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xx140000754
10	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9	
	Secure the cable package at the bottom of the housing with cable straps.	

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

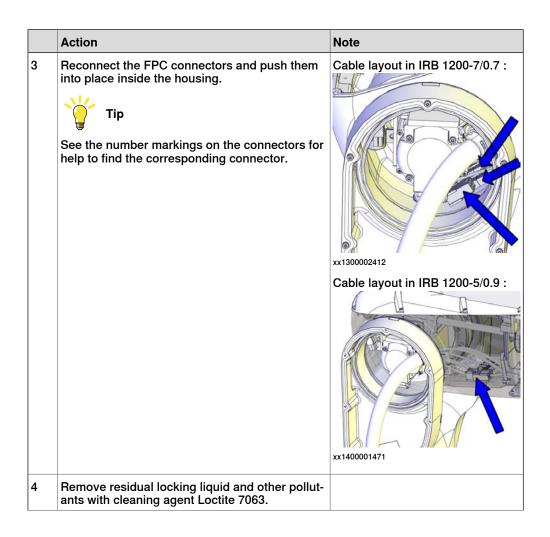
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx1300002371

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xt130002494

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors.	
	See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	xx1300002399



	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	x1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

	Action	Note
13	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001

	Action	Note
3	 If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the gasket. Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574. 	xx1500000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling:	Plate without connector set: 3HAC078810-001
	Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
	Replace if damaged.	xx2100001433
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket. Replace if damaged.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001 Gasket: 3HAC078804-001

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the tubular cable housing cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

575

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345
3	Refit the cover to the cable housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Concluding procedure

re		
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
		xx1400000477
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Reconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then secure the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

4.5.1 Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) *Continued*

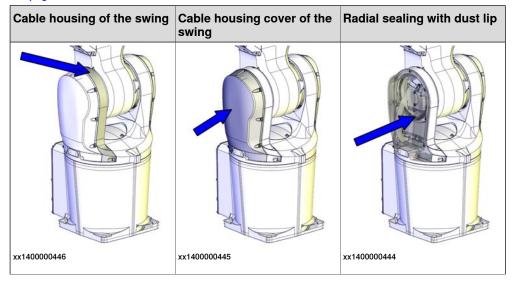
	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	·
	Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the upper arm housing cover.	
	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger	Sealant, Trans Clear
	tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a	
	smooth joint.	
	If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	
		xx1600000215
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
6		
	Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

Swing	Swing cover
xx1400000442	xx1400000443
3HAC059554-001/3HAC082506-001 ⁱ	3HAC059676-001
3HAC059700-001	3HAC056215-001
Used with protection type Clean Room.	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Used for robots with food grade lubrication.	Used for robots with food grade lubrication
Used with protection type Hygienic.	Used with protection type Hygienic.
	Replace if damaged.

Location of the swing spare parts

The swing parts that are considered spare parts are located as shown in the figures.

i Details about the differences between swing 3HAC059554-001 and swing 3HAC082506-001, see Appearance description on page 877 and Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots on page 884.



4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Cable housing of the swing	Cable housing cover of the swing	Radial sealing with dust lip
3HAC059677-001	3HAC059678-001	3HAB3701-41
3HAC056213-001	3HAC056214-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
Used with protection type Clean Room.	Used with protection type Clean Room.	Replace if damaged.
Used for robots with food grade lubrication.	Used for robots with food grade lubrication.	
Used with protection type Hy- gienic.	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.	
Replace if damaged.	Replace if damaged.	

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Swing	3HAC059554-001	Used with protection classes IP40, IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus. If the swing 3HAC049632-001 or 3HAC058000-001 is previously installed on the robot, also a new sealing ring and, for IP67 and Foundry Plus, a gasket and
		a V-ring is required. See Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots on page 884.
Swing	3HAC082506-001	Used with protection classes IP40, IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus.
		Swing 3HAC082506-001 is valid for robots with axis calibration. See <i>Appearance description on</i> <i>page 877</i> for its difference with swing 3HAC059554-001.
Swing, Clean Room Swing, food grade lubrication	3HAC059700-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Swing, Hygienic		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Axis-1 sealing ring	3HAC044676-001 / 3HAC068107-001 ⁱ	Replace if damaged.
Axis-1 sealing ring gasket	3HAC045685-001	Used with protection class IP67.
		Only on axis-1 sealing ring ver- sion 3HAC044676-001. See Spare part versions for the axis- 1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 ro- bots on page 886. Replace if damaged.

Continues on next page

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-1 sealing ring gasket	3HAC058349-001 / 3HAC080707-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Only on axis-1 sealing ring ver- sion 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001. See <i>Spare</i> <i>part versions for the axis-1</i>
		sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886. Replace if damaged.
Sealing ring, gasket and V-ring	3HAC059791-001	Used with protection class IP67. Replace if damaged.
V-ring	3HAB3732-34	Used with protection class IP67.
		Used with protection type Foundry Plus.
		Only on swing version 3HAC058000-001, 3HAC059554- 001 and 3HAC082506-001. See
		Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots on page 884. Replace if damaged.
Cable protection	3HAC044691-001	Replace if damaged.
Torx countersunk head screw M3x5	3HAC14286-4	Replace if damaged.
Cover on top of swing	3HAC059679-001	Replace if damaged.
Cover on top of swing, Clean Room	3HAC056133-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Cover on top of swing, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Cover on top of swing, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on top swing cover	3HAC056696-001 /	Not used with protection class
	3HAC080698-001	IP40. Replace if damaged.
Swing cover	3HAC059676-001	Replace if damaged.
Swing cover, Clean Room Swing cover, food grade lubrica-	3HAC056215-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
tion Swing cover, Hygienic		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Ching Cover, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket on swing cover	3HAC056727-001 / 3HAC080705-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-41	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Cable housing of the swing	3HAC059677-001	Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Cable housing of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing of the swing, food	3HAC056213-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade
grade lubrication Cable housing of the swing, Hy- gienic		lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing	3HAC059678-001	Replace if damaged.
Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication	3HAC056214-001	Used with protection type Clean Room. Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056726-001 / 3HAC080704-001	Not used for robots with protec- tion class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC081398-001	Used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Axis-2 sealing ring	3HAC044677-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-003	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
O-ring	3HAC048939-001	Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-004	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Cable harness material set	3HAC049663-001	Includes brackets, sheets, dis- tance screws, plastics, cable clamp, seal bolts and air protec- tion in tubular.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)
Continuea

Spare part	Article number	Note
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes gasket (3HAC078804- 001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.

For information on which sealing ring to be ordered, see *Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886*.

Required tools and equipment

i

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
Axis-2 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049694-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit	3HAC049703-001	Always use three guide pins together!
Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit	3HAC049704-001	Always use three guide pins together!
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

i The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

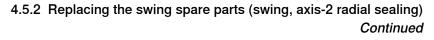
	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the refer- ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i> <i>routine on page 824</i> .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

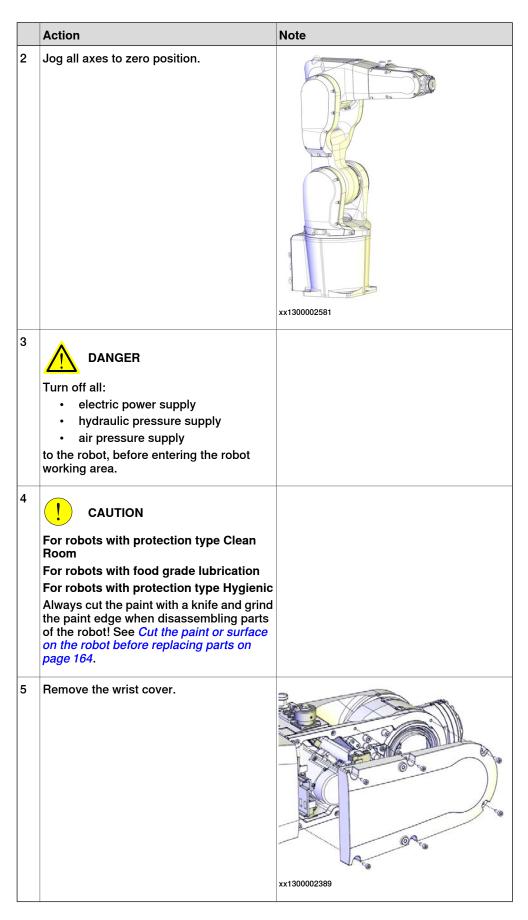
Removing the swing parts

Use these procedures to remove the swing spare parts.

Preparations before removing the swing spare parts

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	





Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X Continues on next page

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Disconnecting the axis-5 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390

Disconnecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx140000738
4	If equipped, disconnect the CP/CS connector.	xx150000252

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	х×130002400
4	Remove the plate.	х×130002413

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	x130002398

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xt130000456

4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xt130002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xt130002495

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Note

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

Action

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	xx1300002420

Removing the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the screw that fastens the air hose hold- er.	xx130002422

4.5.2 Replacing the sv	ing spare parts (swing	, axis-2 radial sealing)
		Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	xt1300002421
5	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	x1300002423
6	Pull out the fix sheet a bit, to access the screws that fasten the cable bracket to the sheet. Loosen the bracket from the sheet by removing the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	x130002424
7	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9 Cut the cable straps at the bottom of the housing.	

Disconnecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
3	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
4	Remove the EIB/SMB cover attachment screws on the lower arm and carefully open the cover. CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors and lugs are disconnected, as shown in following step.	xx130002427
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the connectors on the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm. Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Disconnect the lugs on the EIB/SMB cover.	R2.EIB R2.EIB R1.ME1-3 R1.ME1-
		AN IOUUULTLU

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial se	aling)
Cont	inued

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Loose the connector screws.	x170000004
8	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Disconnect the connectors on the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB Remove the EIB/SMB cover completely from the lower arm.	R1.ME3.6 R1.ME3.6 R1.ME1.2.4.5 xx170000005

Removing the cable package in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Pull the cable package out from the upper arm housing.	

	Action	Note
4	Remove the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	xt130002426
5	Pull out the cable package a bit from the lower arm and remove the bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	xx1300002430
6	Cut the cable strap that holds the cabling together inside the EIB/SMB cavity.	xx1400001130
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Removing the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 173</i> .	xx160000205

	Action	Note
8	Remove the swing cable housing cover by remov- ing the screws.	х130002431
9	Cut the cable straps.	xt40001528
10	Remove the axis-2 motor bracket screws.	x130002432

	Action	Note
11	Pull out the cabling and then remove the axis-2 motor bracket from the cable package by removing the screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	х×1300002433
12	Disconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Loosen the cable housing from the swing by re- moving the screws. Leave it hanging on the cable package.	x130002435

	Action	Note
14	Remove the axis-2 sealing ring by removing the screws.	xx140000020
15	Pull out the cable package from the lower arm. Tip There is a groove on the lower arm casting that simplifies cable passage, if needed. Its position can easily be felt by hand.	
16	Loosen the plastic plate from the cable housing in order to facilitate continued removal of the cable package .	xx140000023

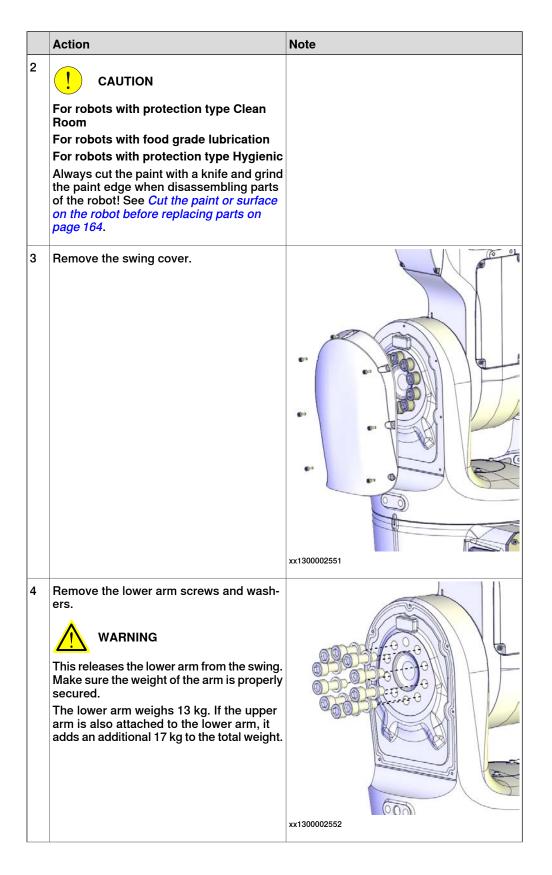
4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Fitting lifting equipment to the upper and lower arm

	Action	Note
1		
	The lower and upper arms together weigh 30 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accord- ingly!	
2	Fit lifting slings to the upper and lower arm.	Roundsling, 2 m

Removing the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	



	Action	Note
5	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001
		Always use three guide pins together!
6	Separate the lower arm from the swing. Tip If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the swing, two of the lower arm screws can be refitted in their attachment holes. Leave some space between the screw head and the swing casting. Then use a plastic hammer to knock on the screws lightly and evenly.	

Removing the swing

Use this procedure if replacing the swing.

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164</i> .	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the swing top cover by removing the screws. Tip Fit M4 screws in the cover holes to pull out the cover more easily. Only tighten the screws lightly in order not to damage the threads.	xx140000447
4	Remove the swing attachment screws and washers.	x140000448
5	Lift the swing upwards to access the axis-1 sealing ring. CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the sealing ring fitted to the swing! The swing can not be removed completely until the axis-1 sealing ring is removed, as shown in following step.	x140000449

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Remove the axis-1 sealing ring from the swing and carefully run the cabling out from the swing.	xt40000455

Removing the axis-2 radial sealing (IP67 and Foundry Plus)

Use this procedure if replacing the axis-2 radial sealing.

The sealing is only used for robots with protection class IP67 and with protection type Foundry Plus.

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the axis-2 radial sealing from the cable housing.	

Continues on next page

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Refitting the swing parts

Use these procedures to refit the swing spare parts.

Refitting the swing

Use this procedure if replacing the swing.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On swing version 3HAC058000-001: Add sealant to the swing groove.	Sealant: Sikaflex 521FC.
3	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: Add sealant to the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.)	Sealant: Sikaflex 521FC.

	Action	Note
4	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC044676-001, 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: Check the gasket on the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.)	On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC044676-001: Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC045685-001
		On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001: Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC058349-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080707-001 (Hygienic ic robots)
		xx1600001149
		On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC068107-001:
		Axis-1 sealing ring gasket: 3HAC058349-001 (not Hygienic robots)/3HAC080707-001 (Hygien ic robots)
		xx1900001735

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001, 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: For robots with protection type Foundry Plus On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001 or 3HAC068107-001: Check the V-ring on the axis-1 sealing ring. (See Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.) Replace if damaged.	V-ring: 3HAB3732-34 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC056658-001: xx1600001124 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC058568-001: xx1600001150 On axis-1 sealing ring version 3HAC068107-001: xx1900001736
6	Check the cable protection on the axis-1 sealing ring. Replace if damaged. If replacing the cable protection, use locking liquid Loctite 243 on the screws.	Cable protection: 3HAC044691-001 Torx countersunk head screw M3x5: 3HAC14286-4 Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)
Continued

	Action	Note
7	Fit the axis-1 sealing ring to the swing with the screws and carefully run the cabling out up through the swing.	Axis-1 sealing ring: 3HAC044676- 001 / 3HAC068107-001 ⁱ
		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx140000455
8	Lower the owing down into place while at the	
	Lower the swing down into place while at the same time guiding the cabling through the cable hole.	tx140000449

	Action	Note
9	Refit the swing attachment screws and washers.	Screws: 3HAB3409-52 (M10x35). Tightening torque: 40 Nm.
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on top swing cover: 3HAC056696-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080698-001 (Hygien- ic robots)

	Action	Note
11	Refit the swing top cover with the screws. Replace if damaged.	Cover on top of swing: 3HAC059679-001
	······································	Cover on top of swing, Clean Room
		Cover on top of swing, food grade lubrication
		Cover on top of swing, Hygienic
		: 3HAC056133-001
		Screws: 3HAB3409-209 (M3x20).
		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		x140000447
		Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

For information on which sealing ring to be ordered, see *Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots on page 886.*

Refitting the axis-2 radial sealing (IP67, Foundry Plus, Clean Room, food grade lubrication, Hygienic) Use this procedure if replacing the axis-2 radial sealing.

The sealing is only used for robots with protection class IP67, with protection type Foundry Plus, with protection type Clean Room, with food grade lubrication and protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint	
	free.	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Apply a little grease to the sealing and wipe clean after the refitting.	

i

 Fit the axis-2 radial sealing into the cable housing. Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-41 Fit the axis-2 radial sealing into the cable housing. Fit the circular part of the radial sealing fitting tool against the radial sealing. Fit the tool plate to the other side of the cable housing with the six screws M6X50. 		Action	Note
against the radial sealing. 3HAC049694-001 5 Fit the tool plate to the other side of the cable	3		3HAB3701-41
5 Fit the tool plate to the other side of the cable housing with the six screws M6X50.	4	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing fitting tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-2 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049694-001
xx1400000451	5	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the cable housing with the six screws M6X50.	x140000451

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)
Continued

	Action	Note
6	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	x140000452
7	Remove the assembly tool.	
8	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	

Fitting lifting equipment to the upper and lower arm

	Action	Note
1		
	The lower and upper arms together weigh 30 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accord- ingly!	
2	Fit lifting slings to the upper and lower arm.	Roundsling, 2 m

Refitting the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Check the o-ring. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAC048939-001
3	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 to the cyl- indrical surface in the swing. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Wipe clean the overflowing Loctite 574 if there is any.	х140001403
4	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-003
6	Fit the lower arm to the swing, with guid- ance from the guide pins.	xx1300002563

	Action	Note
7	Refit the lower arm screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243. Secure the screws but do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-51 (M10x30).
8	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing screws and washers using locking li- quid Loctite 243.	
9	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 45 Nm

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room	Gasket on swing cover: 3HAC056727-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080705-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the swing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx140000007
11	Refit the swing cover. Replace if damaged.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Swing cover: 3HAC059676-001 Swing cover, Clean Room Swing cover, food grade lubrication Swing cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056215-001
		x130002551

Continues on next page

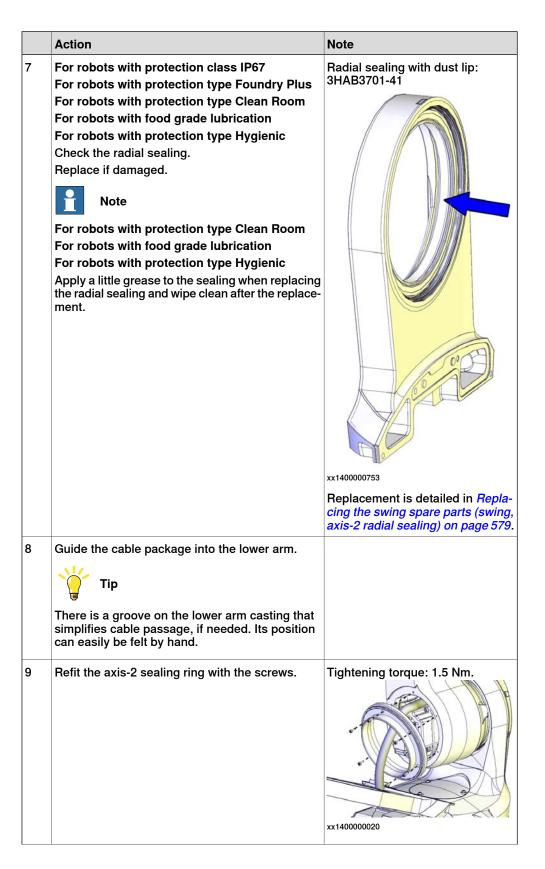
	Action	Note
12	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24
13	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the swing cover. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	
14	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit two screws for protection.	x160001154

Refitting the cable package in the lower arm

cnau	kage in the lower arm		
	Action	Note	
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.		
2	Check the axis-2 sealing ring. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC081398- 001 (for robots in IP40) / 3HAC044677-001 (for robots not in IP40) Gasket of axis-2 sealing ring: 3HAC045688-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080697-001 (Hygien- ic robots)	
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing plastic plate. Replace if damaged.	Gasket of plastic plate: 3HAC044894-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080695-001 (Hygien- ic robots)	

	Action	Note
4	Fetch the cable housing, the plastic plate and the axis-2 sealing ring and run the cable package through them.	x140000025
5	Fasten the plastic plate to the cable housing, if removed. Replace if damaged.	The plastic plate is included in: Cable harness material set: 3HAC049663-001.

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 004



4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing)
Continuea

	Action	Note
10	Refit the cable housing with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10). Tightening torque: 3 Nm.
11	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	replace them with other screws.

	Action	Note
12	Reconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xt130002434
13	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the cable pack- age with the two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
14	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket to the motor.	xt130002432

	Action	Note
15	Secure the connector R2.MP2 and its cable with cable straps onto the motor bracket. Make sure the connector is fixed by its tab to the bracket.	x1400001529
16	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	x140000482
17	 In order to keep the cabling away from the hot axis-2 motor, the cable package must be secured accordingly inside the EIB/SMB cavity: 1 The cable package is strapped with tape by the supplier at two locations. Put a cable strap around the cable package at each location. 2 Insert a third cable strap through the top strap and the bottom strap, and close the strap to secure the cable package and keep it in place. See the figure. 	

	Action	Note
18	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056726-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080704-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
19	Check the PTFE film. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
20	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and to the PTFE film surface.	

	Action	Note
21	Refit the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Cable housing cover of the swing: 3HAC059678-001
	Note Remember to refit the two lower screws shown in the figure.	Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room
		Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication
		Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic
		: 3HAC056214-001
		Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8).
		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx1300002431
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
22	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	Protection plug for lifting holes: 3HAC4836-24

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	·	
	Action	Note
23	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Refit the swing sealing plug. Follow the procedure specified in <i>Refitting the</i> <i>swing sealing plug on page 174</i> .	Swing sealing plug:3HAC053687- 001
24	Refit the lower arm bracket to the cable package.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	
		xx1300002430

Connecting the cabling in the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	
	The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit please read the safety information in the section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 67</i>	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe	
	the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the EIB/SMB cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on EIB/SMB cover: 3HAC056728-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080706-001 (Hygien- ic robots)
5	Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A Connect the connectors to the EIB unit. • R1.ME1-3 • R1.ME4-6 • R2.EIB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.EIB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection. Valid for IRB 1200 (no type specified) and IRB 1200 Type A	r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB r2.EIB
6	Connect the lugs to the EIB/SMB cover. Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Connect the connectors to the SMB unit. • R1.ME1,2,4,5 • R1.ME3,6 • R2.SMB WARNING Make sure not to mix the R2.SMB and R2.ME2. Axis 2 may be severely damaged. See the labels on the connectors for correct connection.	R2.SMB R1.ME3,6 R1.ME1,24,5

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	Valid for IRB 1200 Type B Tighten the connector screws.	Tightening torque: 0.2 Nm
8	Refit the EIB/SMB cover to the lower arm with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Refit the fix sheet attachment screws in the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Refitting the cable package in the housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Before guiding the cable package into the housing and upper arm, apply grease to the cable package, to the area going into the upper arm, shown in the figure. Cover all moving area of the package.	cable package already fitted to the

	Action	Note
3	Guide the cable package into the upper arm, through the housing. Image: Note Guide the air hoses (A) underneath the bottom side of the axis-3 motor and the axis-3 motor cables (B) on top of the motor, see cable layout figure. The fix point of the air hoses is pre-determined (marked) and must be matched against the air hose holder on the left side of the axis-3 motor. Image: Note The air hose holder keeps the air hoses arranged in an optimized way. It is necessary to keep the air hose holder vertically and firmly against the left side of the axis-3 motor.	xx1400001472
4	Refit the bracket to the sheet with two screws. CAUTION Do not loosen the cable clamp screw! There is a risk of rearrangement of the cable layout which would result in shortened lifetime of the cable harness.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing	ng)
Continu	ıed

	Action	Note
6	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
7	Fit the air hose holder to the bracket. Replace the holder, if damaged.	Air hose holders are included in Cable harness material set (3HAC049663-001).
	Тір	Tightening torque: 4 Nm.
	If the air hose holder is difficult to fit, firstly remove the bracket from the fix sheet by removing the two M3 screws. Fit the holder to the bracket and then refit the complete assembly to the fix sheet again. Tightening torque for the two M3 screws: 1.5 Nm.	
8	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xx130002420

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
9	Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.	xx140000754
10	Valid for IRB 1200-5/0.9	
	Secure the cable package at the bottom of the housing with cable straps.	

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

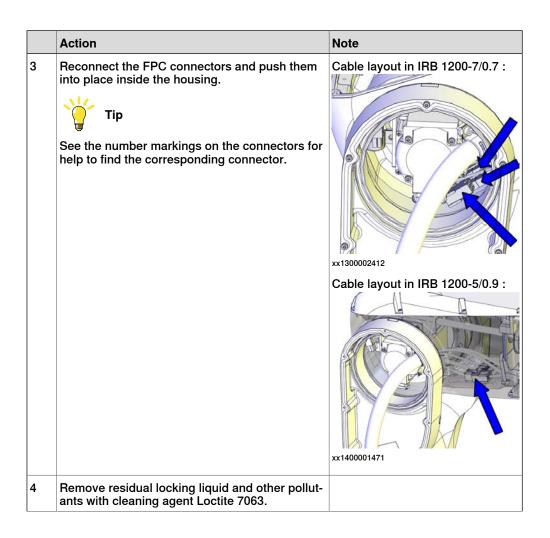
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx130002371

	Action	Note
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	x130002494

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	
		xx1300002399

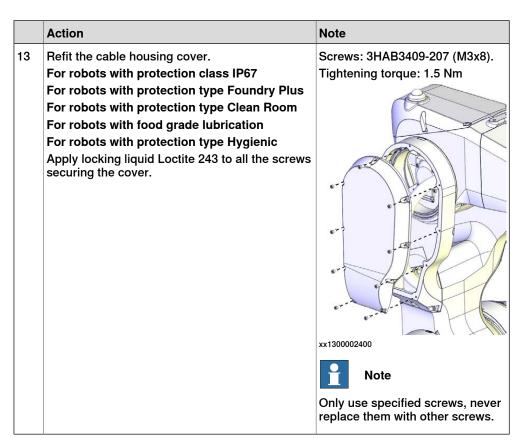


	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	xx1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*



Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001

4.5.2 Replacing the swing spare parts (swing, axis-2 radial sealing) *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the gasket. Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574. 	xx150000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling:	Plate without connector set: 3HAC078810-001
	Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
	Replace if damaged.	xx2100001433
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	x140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket. Replace if damaged.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001 Gasket: 3HAC078804-001

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx1300002360

Refitting the tubular cable housing cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345
3	Refit the cover to the cable housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Reconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then secure the cover.	xx1400000477 Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC
	Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	the upper arm housing cover.	Sealant, Trans Clear
	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint.	
	If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	
		xx1600000215
		XX160000215
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
6		
	Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.5.3 Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop

<image>

4.5.3 Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop

xx1400000391

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical stop set, axis 1		Includes mechanical stop pin (1 pc), washer and screw.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit		Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

4.5.3 Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop *Continued*

Replacing the mechanical stop

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 mechanical stop.

Preparations before removing the mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	Jog the robot to a position where the mechanical stop is most easily accessed.	
2		
	Turn off all: • electric power supply	
	 hydraulic pressure supply 	
	air pressure supply	
	to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
3		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164</i> .	

4.5.3 Replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the mechanical stop by removing the screw.	•
4	Discard the old screw and washer.	
5	Refit and secure the new stop with the enclosed screw and washer.	xx140000392 Screw: 9ADA183-37 (M8x25). Tightening torque: 12 Nm. ightening torque: 12 Nm. Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
7	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test	
	run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 118.	

4.6.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit

4.6 Motors and gearboxes

4.6.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit

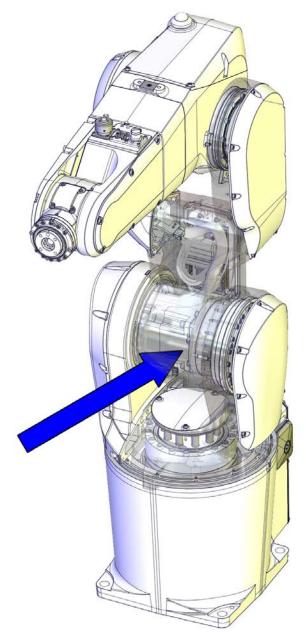
Part of complete base

The axis-1 gear unit and axis-1 motor is part of the complete base spare part assembly, see *Replacing the base spare parts (base, axis-1 radial sealing, protection sleeve) on page 499*.

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit

Location of the drive unit

The axis-2 drive unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002547

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Continues on next page

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Drive unit	3HAC049645-001	Includes axis-2 gearbox, AC motor with encoder interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-001).
Drive unit, food grade lubrication	3HAC057903-001	Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Includes axis-2 gearbox, AC motor with encoder interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-001).
Drive unit, SafeMove 2-suppor- ted	3HAC061273-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Includes axis-2 gearbox, AC motor with resolver interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-001).
Drive unit, food grade lubrication and SafeMove 2-supported Drive unit, Hygienic	3HAC061274-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> . Used for robots with food grade lubrication. Used with protection type Hy- gienic Includes axis-2 gearbox, AC motor with resolver interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-001).
O-ring	3HAC048939-001	Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-003	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on swing cover	3HAC056727-001 / 3HAC080705-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056726-001 / 3HAC080704-001	Not used for robots with protec- tion class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit	3HAC049704-001	Always use three guide pins together!
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Harmonic grease 4B No. 2	3HAC037302-001	Total amount: 60 g. Used to lubricate the gearbox. The gear is pre-filled at delivery but grease may need to be added depending on the actual condi- tion.
LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-0	3HAC043771-001	Total amount: 60 g. Used to lubricate the gearbox of robots with food grade lubrication and robots with protection type Hygienic. The gear is pre-filled at delivery but grease may need to be added depending on the actual condi- tion.
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Clean Room. For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration:	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant
Find previous reference values for the axis	
or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair proced-	
ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot.	Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i>
If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	routine on page 824.
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the drive unit

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 drive unit.

Preparations before removing the axis-2 drive unit

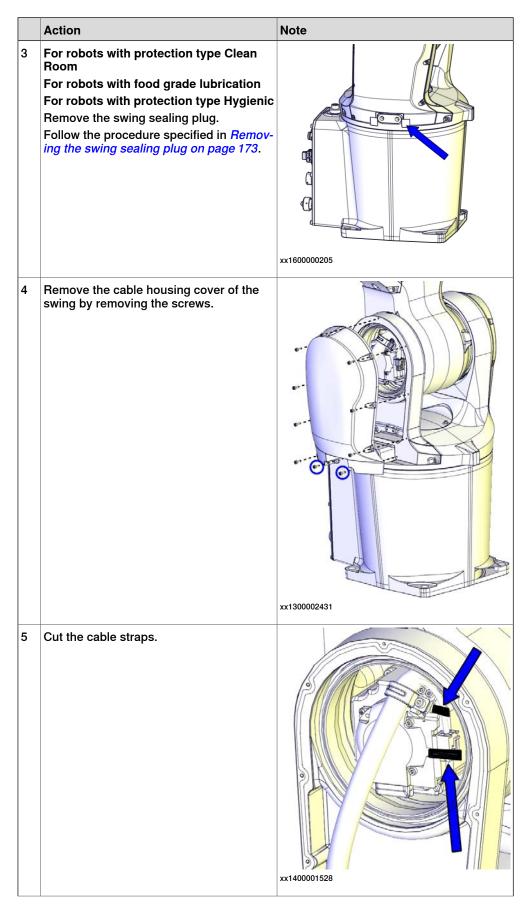
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

	Action	Note
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
5		
	The lower and upper arms together weigh 30 kg.	
	All lifting accessories used must be sized accord- ingly!	
6	Fit a roundsling to the upper arm to support the weight of the upper and lower arm. (no force)	

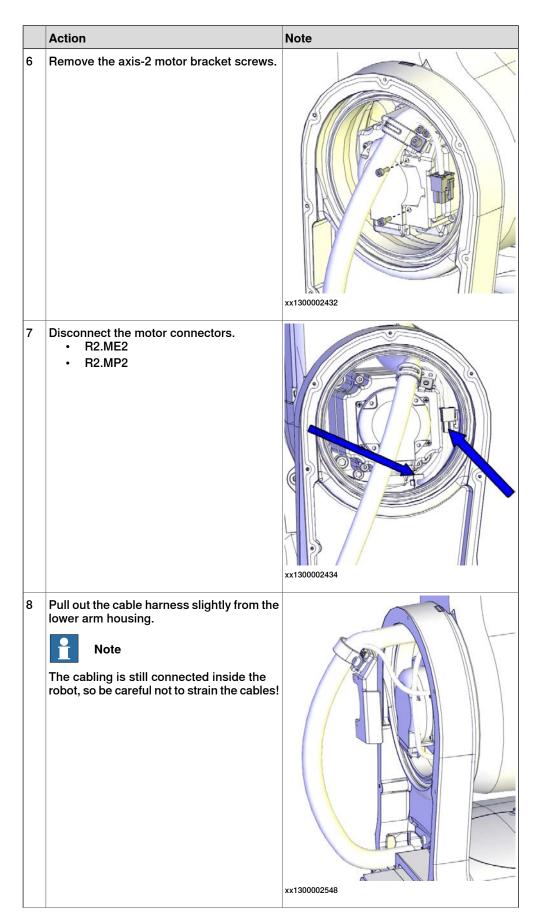
Loosening the cabling in the swing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*



Continues on next page



Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X Continues on next page

	Action	Note
9	Loosen the cable housing of the swing by removing the screws, and tilt it outwards.	
	Make sure that the sealing in the cable housing does not get damaged when the cable housing is hanging on the cable.	
		xx1300002549

Removing the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the swing cover.	xx130002551
4	Remove the lower arm screws and washers. WARNING This releases the lower arm from the swing. Make sure the weight of the arm is properly secured. The lower arm weighs 13 kg. If the upper arm is also attached to the lower arm, it adds an additional 17 kg to the total weight.	

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001
		Always use three guide pins together!
6	Separate the lower arm from the swing.	
	If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the swing, two of the lower arm screws can be refitted in their attachment holes. Leave some space between the screw head and the swing casting. Then use a plastic hammer to knock on the screws lightly and evenly.	xx1300002553

Removing the axis-2 drive unit

Action	Note
DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
For robots with protection type Clean Room	
For robots with food grade lubrication	
For robots with protection type Hygienic	
Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i>

	Action	Note
3	CAUTION The lower and upper arms together weigh 30 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!	
4	If there is enough space on the site, lay down the lower arm on a workbench. Make sure to support the gravity center of the lower arm. If the site is cramp, the procedure can be performed having the lower arm hanging in the lifting slings. If removing the axis-2 drive unit from a hanging lower arm, it is best performed by two persons working together: • Person 1: Hold the lower arm still. • Person 2: Remove the drive unit screws according to step below.	
5	Remove the grey screws from the drive unit. WARNING Keep the eight black screws fitted. They hold the gearbox together. Removing them can damage the gearbox severely.	
6	Insert two M4 screws to the press out holes and press out the drive unit.	x14000008
7	Carefully pull out the complete drive unit.	xx1300002555

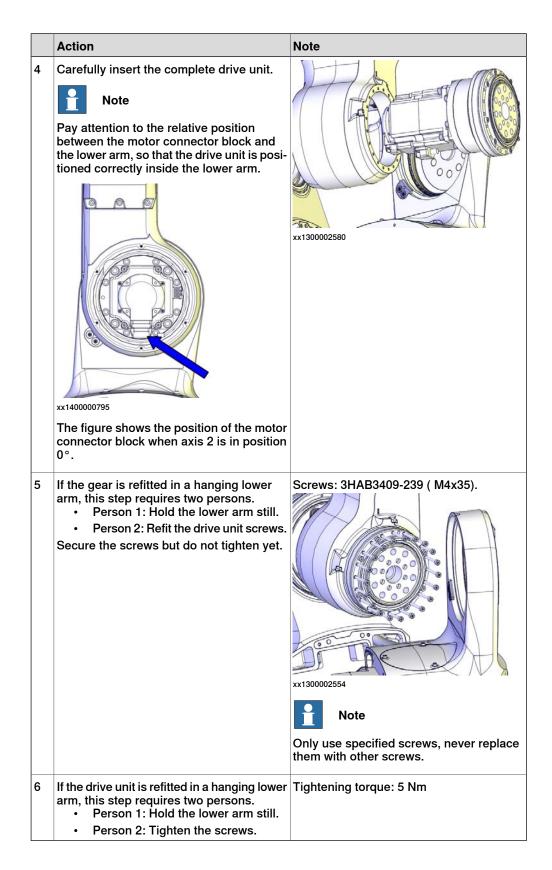
4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*

Refitting the drive unit

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 drive unit.

Refitting the axis-2 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check if there is a sufficient amount of grease on the gear. Apply more grease, if needed.	Harmonic grease 4B No. 2: 3HAC037302- 001 For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-0: 3HAC043771-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the lower arm.	x14000006



4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*

Refitting the lower arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check the o-ring. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAC048939-001
3	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 to the cyl- indrical surface in the swing. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Wipe clean the overflowing Loctite 574 if there is any.	xt40001403

	Action	Note
4	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit: 3HAC049704-001
		Always use three guide pins together!
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-003
6	Fit the lower arm to the swing, with guid- ance from the guide pins.	xx130002563

	Action	Note
7	Refit the lower arm screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243. Secure the screws but do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-51 (M10x30).
8	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing screws and washers using locking li- quid Loctite 243.	x130002565
9	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 45 Nm

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the swing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on swing cover: 3HAC056727-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080705-001 (Hygienic robots)
		xx140000007
11	Refit the swing cover. Replace if damaged.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Swing cover: 3HAC059676-001 Swing cover, Clean Room Swing cover, food grade lubrication Swing cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056215-001

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
12	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection plugs for lifting holes. Replace if damaged.	3HAC4836-24
13	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the swing cover. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
14	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit two screws for protection.	x160001154

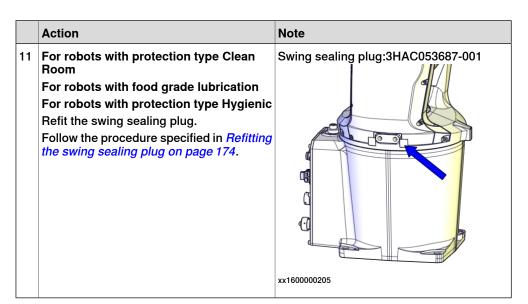
Securing the cabling to the swing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the cable housing to the swing with the screws.	Tightening torque: 3 Nm.
3	Insert the cable harness into the lower arm.	х<130002548

	Action	Note
4	Reconnect the motor connectors. • R2.ME2 • R2.MP2	xx130002434
5	Refit the axis-2 motor bracket with the screws.	xt130002432
6	Secure the connector R2.MP2 and its cable with cable straps onto the motor bracket. Make sure the connector is fixed by its tab to the bracket.	x140001529

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056726-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080704-001 (Hygienic robots)
8	Check the PTFE film. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
9	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	
10	Refit the cable housing cover with the screws.	Cable housing cover of the swing: 3HAC059678-001
	Note	Cable housing cover of the swing, Clean Room
	Remember to refit the two lower screws shown in the figure.	Cable housing cover of the swing, food grade lubrication Cable housing cover of the swing, Hygienic : 3HAC056214-001 Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx1300002431
		Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

4.6.2 Replacing the axis-2 drive unit *Continued*



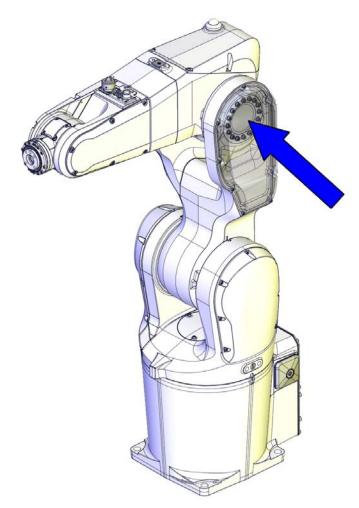
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Remove the lifting slings from the robot.	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
3	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.
4	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit

Location of drive unit

The axis-3 drive unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002527

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal,

www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Drive unit	3HAC061403-001	Includes axis-3 gearbox, AC motor with encoder interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-002).

671

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Drive unit, food grade lubrication	3HAC057905-001	Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Includes axis-3 gearbox, AC motor with encoder interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-002).
Drive unit, SafeMove 2-suppor- ted	3HAC061275-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
		Includes axis-3 gearbox, AC motor with resolver interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-002).
Drive unit, food grade lubrication and SafeMove 2-supported.	3HAC061276-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
Drive unit, Hygienic		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Used with protection type Hy- gienic
		Includes axis-3 gearbox, AC motor with resolver interface, motor adapter and O-ring (3HAC048939-002).
O-ring	3HAC048939-002	Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-005	Used with protection class IP67.
		Used with protection type Foundry Plus.
		Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-006	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type
		Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing	3HAC024865-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket on lower arm cover	3HAC056725-001 / 3HAC080703-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket on lower arm cable housing	3HAC044895-001 / 3HAC080696-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Guide pin for upper arm	3HAC049705-001	Always use three guide pins together!
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

i

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC For robots with protection type Clean Room. For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic
Harmonic grease 4B No. 2	3HAC037302-001	Total amount: 32 g. Used to lubricate the gearbox. The gear is pre-filled at delivery but grease may need to be added depending on the actual condi- tion.
LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-0	3HAC043771-001	Total amount: 32 g. Used to lubricate the gearbox of robots with food grade lubrication and robots with protection type Hygienic. The gear is pre-filled at delivery but grease may need to be added depending on the actual condi- tion.

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit *Continued*

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the drive unit

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 drive unit.

Preparations before removing the axis-3 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581

	Action	Note
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
5	Remove the cable housing cover.	xx130002400
6	Remove the plate.	xt130002413

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit *Continued*

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

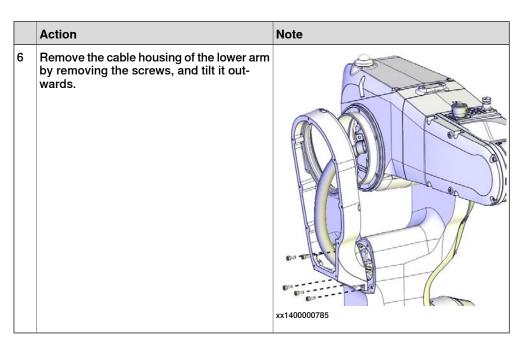
	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Pull out the axis-3 motor connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	xt130002420

Creating space for separation of upper and lower arm

Action	Note
power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
For robots with protection type Clean Room	
For robots with food grade lubrication	
For robots with protection type Hygienic	
Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i>

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	x130002421
4	Remove the screws that fasten the fix sheet to the motor.	x130002423
5	Pull out the cable harness slightly from the upper arm housing and from the lower arm. Note The cabling is still connected inside the robot, so be careful not to strain the cables!	

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit *Continued*



Removing the upper arm

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the lower arm cover.	хx130002528
4	CAUTION The upper arm weighs 17 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly!	
5	Fit lifting slings to the upper arm to support the weight of the arm. (no force)	
6	Remove the upper arm screws. WARNING This releases the upper arm from the lower arm. Make sure the weight of the upper arm is properly secured by the lifting slings.	xx130002531

4.6.3 Replacing the axis-3 drive unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Fit guide pins to the upper arm.	Guide pin for upper arm: 3HAC049705-001 Always use three guide pins together!
8	Separate the upper and lower arm with guidance from the guide pins.	хх130002533

Removing the axis-3 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

	Action	Note
3	Remove the drive unit screws.	x130002532
4	Carefully pull out the complete drive unit. CAUTION The axis-3 gear unit and motor adapter are not secured to each other with screws! Be careful when handling the drive unit.	xx1300002534

Refitting the drive unit

Use this procedure to refit the axis-3 drive unit.

Refitting the axis-3 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check if there is a sufficient amount of grease on the gear. Apply more grease, if	Harmonic grease 4B No. 2: 3HAC037302- 001.
	needed.	For robots with food grade lubrication
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
		LUBRIPLATE SYNXTREME FG-0: 3HAC043771-001

	Action	Note
3	Check the o-ring for damage. Replace if damaged.	O-ring: 3HAC048939-002
4	Remove the two screws and nuts that se- cure the axis-3 motor adapter and gear unit to each other during transport.	xx140000004
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the motor adapter.	
6	Refit the drive unit into the upper arm. Note Make sure to refit the drive unit correctly oriented. When the upper arm is in its zero position (horizontal), the motor connectors should point downwards.	

	Action	Note
7	Refit the drive unit screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-214 (M4x40) Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm
8	Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface on</i> <i>the robot before replacing parts on page 164</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

Refitting the upper arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Fit guide pins to the axis-3 gear unit.	Guide pin for upper arm: 3HAC049705-001 Always use three guide pins together!
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-005

	Action	Note
4	Refit the upper arm to the lower arm and secure with the upper arm screws and washers. Do not tighten yet.	Screws: 3HAB3409-213 (M4x25).
5	Remove the guide pins and refit the remain- ing screws and washers.	xx140000029
6	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
7	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Gasket on lower arm cover: 3HAC056725- 001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080703- 001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the lower arm cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	x140000047
8	Refit the lower arm cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8).
0		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

	Action	Note
9	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Gasket on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044895-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080696-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the cable housing gasket. Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000414
10	For robots with protection class IP67	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-006
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Radial sealing: 3HAC024865-001
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the axis-3 radial sealing and the M2 variseal sealing in the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	
	Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on Clean Room, food grade lubrication and Hygienic robots.	
	Note	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	xx1400000473
	For robots with food grade lubrication	Replacement is detailed in <i>Replacing the</i>
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring on
	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	page 425.

	Action	Note
11	Refit the cable housing of the lower arm.	Tightening torque: 3 Nm
12	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the cable housing of the lower arm. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint. Note No sealing is required in the cavities of the three lower screws highlighted with a ring in the figure.	For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear
13	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit two screws for protection.	x1600001155

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Refit the fix sheet to the motor.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
2	Refit the fix sheet to the inner plastic guide.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
3	Reconnect the axis-3 motor connectors.	xt130002420

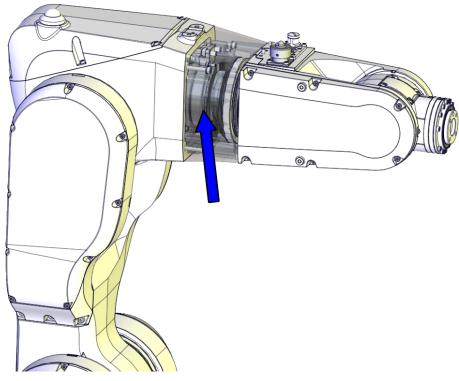
	Action	Note
4	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	3HAC080702-001 (Hygienic robots)

	Action	Note
6	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
7	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	
8	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm Image: 1.5 Nm Ima
9	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
10	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration</i> on page 811.

Action	Note
DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

Location of gearbox, drive shaft and pulley

The axis-4 gearbox, including drive shaft and pulley, is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002462

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Gearbox	3HAC049629-001	
Gearbox, food grade lubrication Gearbox, Hygienic	3HAC057904-001	Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Shaft	3HAC044692-001	
Pulley	3HAC044687-001	
Motor bracket	3HAC044689-001	Replace if damaged.
Gearbox sleeve	3HAC044685-001	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-007	Used with protection class IP67. Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing with dust lip	3HAB3701-48	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Washer	3HAC044869-001	Replace if damaged
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Washer	3HAC044869-001	Replace if damaged
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049699-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

i The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot.	Follow the instructions given in the refer- ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i> <i>routine on page 824</i> .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the gear unit

Preparations before removing the axis-4 gear unit

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with locking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Note	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	xt60001148
	For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace if damaged or missing.	For robots with protection type Hygienic
		xx2100001406

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	 Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. R3.MP5 R3.ME5 Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. 	xx1300002360

Removing the axis-5 motor with pulley

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	xx1300002350
4	Remove the timing belt.	
		xx1300002351
5	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xx1300002390
6	Remove the screws and pull out the motor.	xx1300002352

Removing the wrist

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Disconnect the connectors shown in the figure.	xx1300002353
4	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1300002355
5	Remove the connector plate attachment screws.	x130002356

	Action	Note
6	Guide the hoses through the plate hole and re- move the plate.	х<130002357
7	Support the weight of the wrist and remove the screws and the washer.	хx130002358
8	Pull out the wrist carefully while at the same time pulling all connectors and the air hoses out of the wrist. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors. CAUTION Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	xx1300002359

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xx130000456
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx130002494

4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulle	y
Continued	d

	í .	1
	Action	Note
5	Disconnect the motor connectors.	100/
	Тір	
	Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002495
		XX1300002495

Disconnecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the cable housing cover.	xt130002400

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the plate.	xx130002413
5	Pull out the FPC connectors from the housing and disconnect them.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :

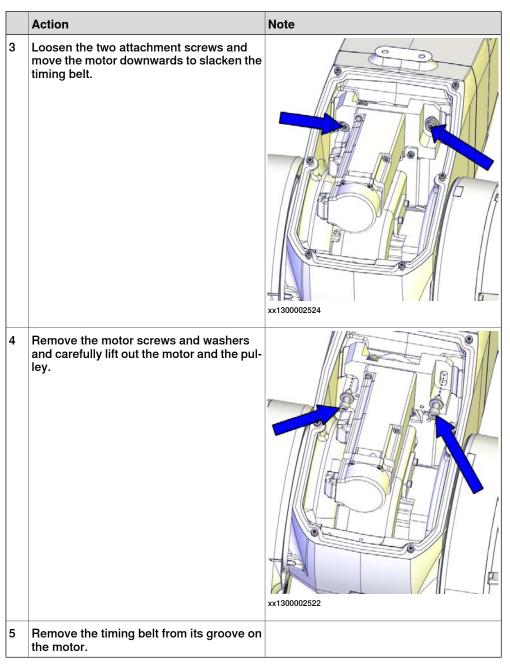
4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley
Continued

	Action	Note
6	Remove the small cover of the housing.	xx1300002398
7	Disconnect the remaining FPC connectors.	xx1300002399

Removing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X



Removing the air hoses

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the plastic protection plate by re- moving its screws.	х×140000797
4	Pull in the air hoses into the housing, out from the housing extender unit.	

Removing the housing extender unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	xx1300002373
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove the plugs covering the extender unit screws with a needle-nose plier.	xx160000262
5	Remove the extender unit screws.	xx1300002372
6	Remove the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling.	xx1300002374

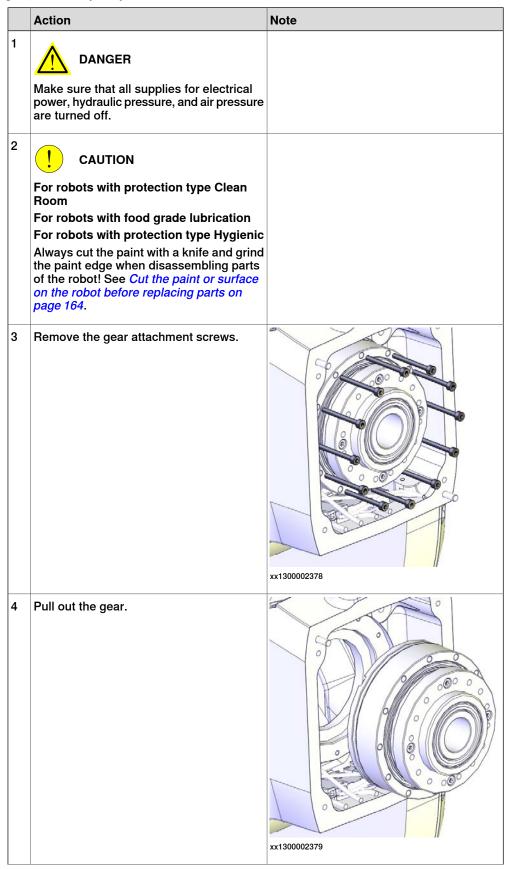
Removing the axis-4 drive shaft

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	xt130002376
4	Remove the shaft.	хх140002400
5	If replacing the drive shaft with a new spare part, remove the sleeve from the shaft and fit it to the new shaft.	xx130002387

Removing the axis-4 gear unit and pulley



4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Remove the pulley from the gear by remov- ing its attachment screws.	xt130002380

Refitting the gear unit

Refitting the axis-4 gear unit and pulley

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the pulley to the gear and secure with its attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-209 (M3x20). Tightening torque: 1.1 Nm.

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the gear to the housing.	хх130002379
4	Secure with the attachment screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-211 (M3x30). Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm.

Refitting the axis-4 drive shaft

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	If replacing the drive shaft with a new spare part, remove the sleeve from the old shaft and fit it to the new shaft. Also move the screw on top of the old drive shaft to the new shaft.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
3	Position the shaft so that the encircled screw is on top, then refit the shaft.	xt130002377
4	Secure with screws and washers.	Screws: 3HAB3409-210 (M3x25). Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm.

Checking the housing extender sealings

	Action	Note
4		NOLE
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-007
3	For robots with protection class IP67	Radial sealing with dust lip: 3HAB3701-48
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	A
	Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below.	
	In order to replace the radial sealing, both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit must be removed from the hous- ing extender unit, if not already removed.	x140000438
		AA 1400000430
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	

	Action	Note
5	Fit the radial sealing into the housing ex- tender unit.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049699-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the housing extender unit with the six screws M6X50.	
		xx1400000436
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	x140000437
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	
11	Refit both the axis-4 mechanical stop and the axis-4 FPC unit to the housing extender unit.	

Refitting the housing extender unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the housing extender unit.	xt30002613
3	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Make sure the four cavities are fully filled with glue. If not, fill glue again before the refitting.	x160000216
4	Refit the housing extender unit to the housing while putting the FPC cables into the housing and the air hoses through the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the cabling. CAUTION Make sure that the axis-4 FPC unit is in its zero position when refitting the housing extender unit. Note Mate the unit to the two locating pins attached to the housing.	xx1300002374
5	Secure with screws and washers, using locking liquid Loctite 243.	Screws: M4x30. Tightening torque: 2.7 Nm.

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Press in screw sealing plugs to cover the screws.	Screw sealing plug: 3HAC053685- 001
7	Fit and secure the axis-4 FPC unit screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt and the air hoses

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Place the timing belt at the gear pulley and run the air hoses through the belt.	
3	Install the air hoses in and through the housing extender unit.	

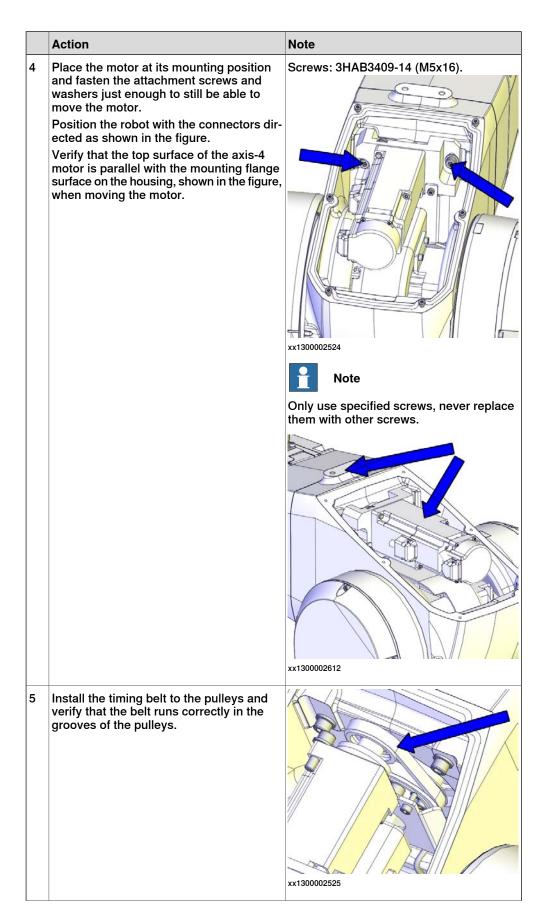
717

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the plastic protection plate with its screws.	x140000797

Securing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and undamaged. the motor is clean and undamaged. 	
	• the motor is clean and undamaged.	
3	Fit the timing belt to the motor pulley.	



4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Move the motor to achieve correct belt tension ($F = 30$ N).	Belt tension: F = 30 N.
7	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm.

Connecting the axis-4 FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the FPC connectors. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	xx1300002399
3	Reconnect the FPC connectors and push them into place inside the housing. Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.	Cable layout in IRB 1200-7/0.7 :
		Cable layout in IRB 1200-5/0.9 :
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063.	

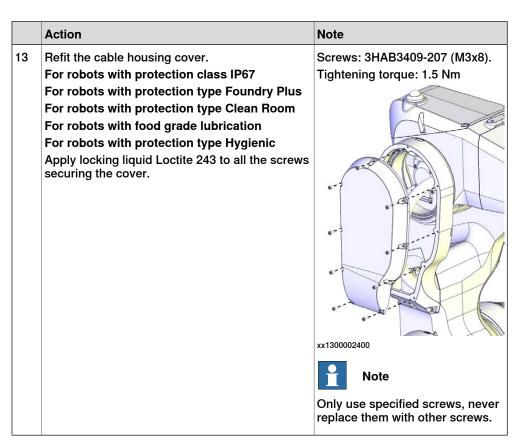
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply flange sealing Sikaflex 521FC on the mounting surfaces of the small cover on the housing.	
6	Refit the small cover to the housing. Replace if damaged.	xx1300002398 Housing small cover: 3HAC059684- 001 Housing small cover, Clean Room Housing small cover, food grade lubrication Housing small cover, Hygienic : 3HAC056142-001 Screws: 3HAC14286-4 (M3X5). Tightening torque: 1 Nm.
7	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the small cover on the housing. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
8	Refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
9	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on lower arm cable housing: 3HAC044710-001

	Action	Note
10	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080702-001 (Hygien- ic robots) PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
11	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	
12	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*



Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx1300002371

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xt130002494

Refitting the wrist

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Put the connectors and air hoses into the wrist carefully while at the same time refitting the wrist to the housing extender unit. Be careful not to damage the FPC cabling and the connectors.	xx1300002359
	Pay special attention to the plastic block on the FPC unit. It is easily pulled off, make sure it stays fitted to the FPC unit.	
	xx130002611	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the washer while at the same time putting the cables through its center. Replace washer, if damaged.	Washer: 3HAC044869-001
4	Refit the screw M6x35 (1 pc). Do not tighten yet.	Screw: 3HAB3409-238 (M6x35 (1 pc)).
5	Refit the rest of the screws (M5x35 (7 pcs)).	Screw: 3HAB3409-237 (M5x35 (7 pcs)).
6	Tighten all screws.	Tightening torque: 8 Nm.

Continues on next page

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley
Continued

	Action	Note
7	Put the cables through the plate hole and refit the plate.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
8	Reconnect the air hoses. CAUTION Make sure to connect the air hoses correctly, ac- cording to the marking on hoses and connectors.	xx1300002355
9	Reconnect the connectors. • R3.Eth • R3.CPCS	xx1300002353

Preparations before securing the axis-5 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. 	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Place the motor at its mounting position and fasten the attachment screws and washers just enough to still be able to move the motor.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16).

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx1300022351
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	P Note Do not strech the timing belt too much!

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulle	∍у
Continue	эd

	Action	Note
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	
		xx1300002350
		Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xt1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx130002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345

Action	Note
Refit the both covers to the wrist. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
For robots with protection type Clean	xx1300002349 For robots with protection type Clean Room
Room For robots with food grade lubrication Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	For robots with food grade lubrication
	xx1600001153 Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
	xx2100001406

731

4.6.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley *Continued*

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket. Replace if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200- 7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hy- gienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200- 5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hy- gienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of the upper arm housing cover. Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	replace them with other screws. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubric- ation Sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Sealant, Trans Clear **********************************

Continues on next page

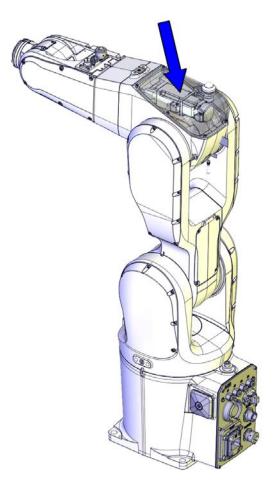
	Action	Note
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot</i> <i>before replacing parts on page 164.</i> Note	
	After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
6	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test run after</i> <i>installation, maintenance, or repair on page 118.</i>	

4.6.5 Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley

4.6.5 Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley

Location of motor

The axis-4 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002474

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley	3HAC045827-001	
Motor with pulley, SafeMove 2-supported.	3HAC061277-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
Motor with pulley, Hygienic		Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Motor flange	3HAC047479-001	Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor bracket	3HAC044689-001	Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB	3HAC056697-001 /	Not used with protection class
1200-5/0.9)	3HAC080699-001	IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

i

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Art. no.	Note
-	Isopropanol
-	
3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
	For robots with protection type Clean Room.
	For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic
	- - 3HAC026759-001

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	stay fitted on the robot.	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.

Continues on next page

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration:	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant
Find previous reference values for the axis	
	o 1 1 <i>j</i>
ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot.	Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i>
If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	routine on page 824.
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the motor with pulley

Use these procedures to remove the motor.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	x130002581
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

	Action	Note
4		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xx130000456

4.6.5 Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xx130002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	x130002495

Removing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	

	Action	Note
3	Loosen the two attachment screws and move the motor downwards to slacken the timing belt.	xx130002524
4	Remove the motor screws and washers and carefully lift out the motor and the pul- ley.	x130002522
5	Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor.	

Separating the axis-4 motor from the motor flange

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the motor flange and bracket from the motor by removing the screws.	xx130002523

Refitting the motor with pulley

Use these procedures to refit the motor.

Fitting the axis-4 motor to the motor flange

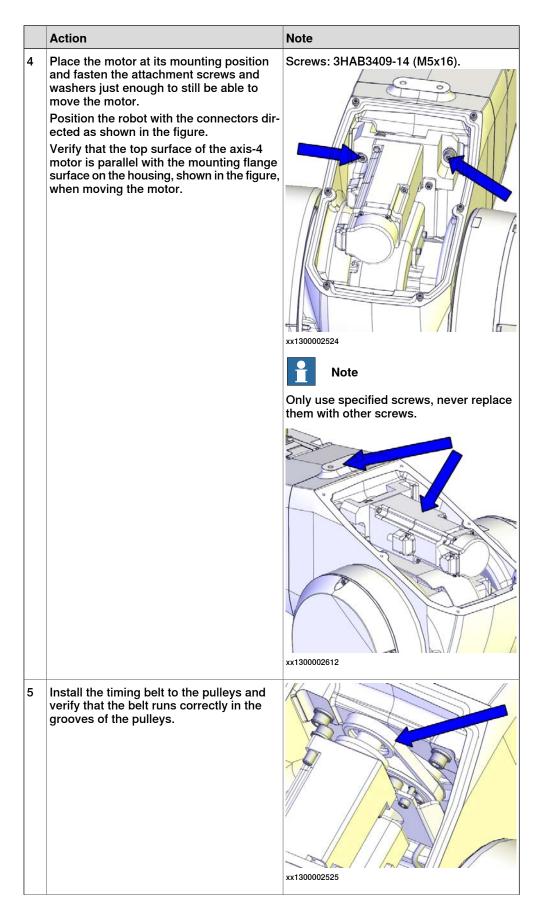
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Refit the motor flange and bracket to the motor with the screws. Replace the flange if damaged.	Motor flange: 3HAC047479-001 Screws: 3HAB3409-14 (M5x16). Tightening torque: 6 Nm.
		x130002523 Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

Securing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and undamaged. the motor is clean and undamaged. 	
<u> </u>	~	
3	Fit the timing belt to the motor pulley.	

741



Continues on next page

	Action	Note
6	Move the motor to achieve correct belt tension ($F = 30 \text{ N}$).	Belt tension: F = 30 N.
7	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm.

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xt130002371
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	x130002494

4.6.5 Replacing the axis-4 motor with pulley *Continued*

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	-
	Check the gasket.	
	Replace if damaged.	
		xx1400000477
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the screws.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx130000456 Note Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

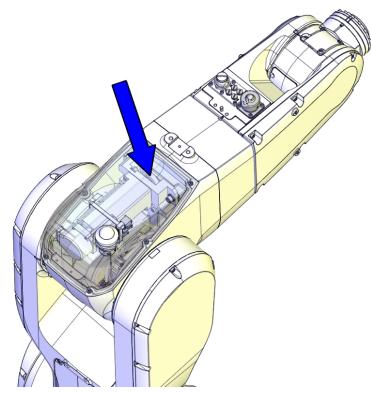
	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication
4	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164. Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	xx1600000215
5	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
6	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Location of timing belt

The axis-4 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx140000036

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt	3HAC044694-001	
Gasket on cable housing cover	3HAC056724-001 / 3HAC080702-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7)	3HAC056698-001 / 3HAC080700-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9)	3HAC056697-001 / 3HAC080699-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.
Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange	3HAC049664-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Air connector set without Ether- net hole in flange	3HAC049665-001	Includes tubular flange, air con- nectors and seal bolts. Replace if damaged.
Plate with connector set	3HAC079691-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes Ethernet connector, air connectors, CP/CS connector and gasket (3HAC078804-001).
Plate without connector set	3HAC078810-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Includes gasket (3HAC078804- 001).
Gasket	3HAC078804-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic. Replace if damage.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard</i> toolkit on page 898.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol
Cable straps	-	
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection type Clean Room.
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC026759-001	Sikaflex 521FC
		For robots with protection type Clean Room.
		For robots with food grade lubric- ation.
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear
		For robots with protection type Hygienic
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243

747

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the timing belt

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 timing belt.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	xx1300002581

	Action	Note
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
5	Remove the lower arm cable housing cover.	xt130002400
6	Remove the tubular cable housing cover.	xx1300002389

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Disconnect the air hoses.	xx1400002327

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the cover from the upper arm housing. CAUTION For robots with safety lamp (option) Be aware of the signal lamp cables that are at- tached inside the housing! Disconnect the lamp cable connectors R3.H1 and R3.H2 and then lift away the cover completely.	xx130000456

	Action	Note
4	Cut the strap that holds the connectors.	xt30002494
5	Disconnect the motor connectors. Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002495

Removing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

751

	Action	Note
3	Loosen the two attachment screws and move the motor downwards to slacken the timing belt.	x130002524
4	Remove the motor screws and washers and carefully lift out the motor and the pul- ley.	xx130002522
5	Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor.	

Removing the air hoses

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind	
	the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i>	
3	Remove the plastic protection plate by re- moving its screws.	x140000797
4	Dull in the six becase into the boundary such	
4	Pull in the air hoses into the housing, out from the housing extender unit.	

Removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i>	
3	replacing parts on page 164. Remove the axis-4 timing belt.	

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt *Continued*

Refitting the timing belt

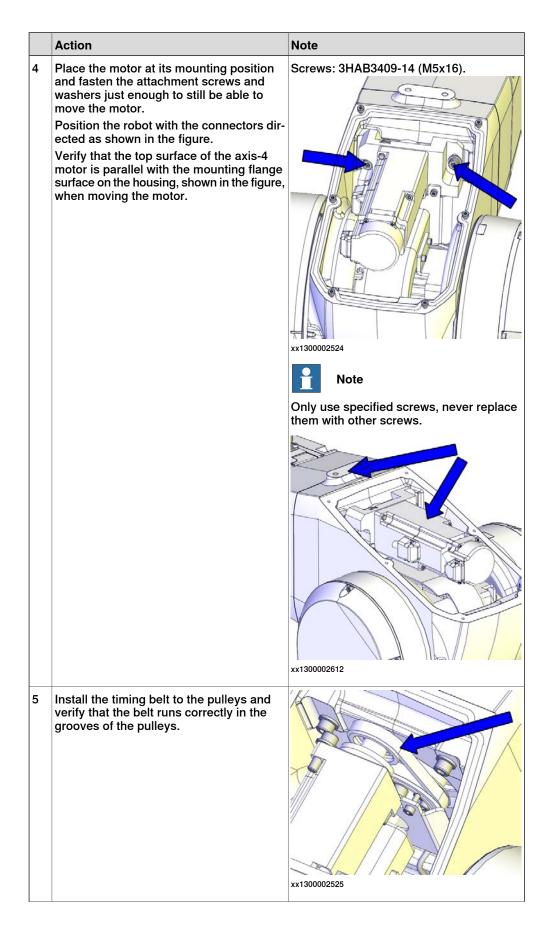
Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 timing belt.

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt and the air hoses

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Place the timing belt at the gear pulley and run the air hoses through the belt.	
3	Install the air hoses in and through the housing extender unit.	
4	Refit the plastic protection plate with its screws.	х140000797

Securing the axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and undamaged. the motor is clean and undamaged. 	
3	Fit the timing belt to the motor pulley.	



Continues on next page

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Move the motor to achieve correct belt tension ($F = 30$ N).	Belt tension: F = 30 N.
7	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm.

Connecting the axis-4 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the motor connectors.	xx130002371
3	Secure the connectors to the motor with a cable strap.	xt130002494

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling (if equipped)

Notice that the procedure differs depending on the protection class and protection type.

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots not in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is not in protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Reconnect the air hoses. Replace the air hose connector set if damaged.	Air connector set with Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049664-001 Air connector set without Ethernet hole in flange: 3HAC049665-001
3	If equipped, reconnect the CP/CS connector. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus 1 Check the gasket. 2 Replace if damaged. For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication 1 Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. 2 Apply flange sealing Loctite 574 on the mounting surfaces of the CP/CS connector and wipe clean if there is any overflowing Loctite 574.	xx150000252 On robots with protection class IP67 On robots with protection type Foundry Plus Gasket: 3HAC080708-001

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus If required, fit the protection bracket for CP/CS connectors.	Protection bracket for CP/CS con- nectors: 3HAC058350-001

Connecting the air hoses and CP/CS cabling on robots in protection type Hygienic

Use this procedure if the robot is with protection type Hygienic.

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	If the Hygienic robot not equipped with air hoses and CP/CS cabling: Check the plate without connector set and the at- tached gasket. Replace if damaged.	3HAC078810-001
3	Reconnect the air hoses.	x140000738
4	Reconnect the CP/CS cabling.	xx150000252

	Action	Note
5	Check the connectors on the plate with connector set and the attached gasket.	Plate with connector set: 3HAC079691-001
	Replace if damaged.	Gasket: 3HAC078804-001
		xx2100001434

Refitting the tubular cable housing cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001

4.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the cover to the cable housing.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx1300002389
		Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.

Concluding procedure

Action		Note
For robo Plus For robo Room For robo For robo Check th	ots with protection class IP67 ots with protection type Foundry ots with protection type Clean ots with food grade lubrication ots with protection type Hygienic ne gasket. if damaged.	Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC056698-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080700-001 (Hygienic robots) Housing cover gasket (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC056697-001 (not Hygienic robots) / 3HAC080699-001 (Hygienic robots)

	Action	Note
2	Refit the upper arm housing cover with the	
	screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
		xx130000456 Note
3	For robots with protection type Clean	them with other screws. For robots with protection type Clean Boom
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	_
	Apply a string of the sealant to the joint of	
	the upper arm housing cover.	Sealant, Trans Clear
	Smooth out the sealant string using a finger tip. Use washing-up on finger tips to get a smooth joint. If necessary, add extra sealant to get a full cover joint.	

	Action	Note
4	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket on cable housing cover: 3HAC056724-001 (not Hygienic robots)/ 3HAC080702-001 (Hygienic robots)/ Contraction of the second
5	Check the PTFE film on the cable housing cover. Replace if damaged.	PTFE film on cable housing cover: 3HAC044660-001
6	Apply grease to the inner surface of the cable housing cover and the PTFE film surface.	

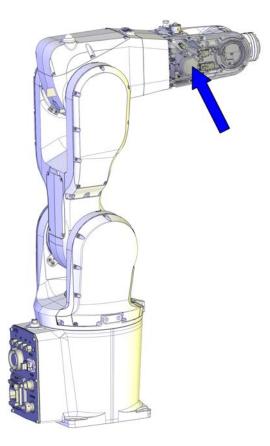
	Action	Note
7	Refit the cable housing cover. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to all the screws securing the cover.	Tightening torque: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm
8	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164. Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
9	Recalibrate the robot. DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 118.	

4.6.7 Replacing the axis-5 motor with pulley

4.6.7 Replacing the axis-5 motor with pulley

Location of motor

The axis-5 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1300002473

Required spare parts

Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley	3HAC045978-001	
Motor with pulley, SafeMove 2-supported. Motor with pulley, Hygienic	3HAC061278-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882</i> .
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

i.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Foundry Plus Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mount- ing flange is used for installation of the calibration tool.
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

Action	Note
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:	
Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the motor with pulley

Preparations before removing the axis-5 motor, pulley or shaft

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	<image/> <image/>
3	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
4	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164.</i>	

Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1		
	Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	

Action		Note
	the covers on each side of the wrist by their screws.	
For robot For robot The two f (encirclec locking lid The tubul	lote ts with protection class IP67 ts with protection type Foundry Plus ront screws on the left hand side cover d in the figure) have been fitted with quid. ar cover (left hand side cover) has two ews and washers, as encircled in the	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	lote	For robots with protection type Clean Room
For robot The tubul	ts with protection type Clean Room ts with food grade lubrication ar cover (left hand side cover) has two ews and washers, as encircled in the	xx1600001148
For robot The tubul extra scre remove th The screv rather tha	lote as with protection type Hygienic ar cover (right hand side cover) has two ews, as encircled in the figure. Do not the two screws when removing the cover. ws are used for blocking the screw holes n fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace ed or missing.	
		xx2100001406

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2		
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before</i> <i>replacing parts on page 164</i> .	
3	Snap loose the motor connectors from their holders and then disconnect them. • R3.MP5	
	• R3.ME5	
	Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	xx1300002360

Removing the axis-5 motor with pulley

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	хx130002350

4.6.7 Replacing the axis-5 motor with pulley *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the timing belt.	
		xx1300002351
5	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	x130002390
6	Remove the screws and pull out the motor.	xx1300002352

Refitting the motor with pulley

Preparations before securing the axis-5 motor

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	 Check that: all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. 	

Action	Note
3 Place the motor at its mounting position and fasten the attachment screws and washers just enough to still be able to move the motor.	Screws: 3HAB3409-212 (M4x16).

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx130002351
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	Note
		Do not strech the timing belt too much!

	Action	Note
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	xt1300002350
		Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xt1300002390

Connecting the axis-5 motor connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	Reconnect the motor cables. • R3.MP5 • R3.ME5	xx130002360

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001
		xx1400000345

	Action	Note
4	Refit the both covers to the wrist.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8).
+		Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.
	For robots with protection class IP67	For robots with protection class IP67
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure. Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		xx1300002349
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with food grade lubrication	For robots with food grade lubrication
	Remember to refit the extra two screws and washers to the tubular cover.	
		xx1600001153
		Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
	Note	For robots with protection type Hygienic
	For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the two extra screws on the tubular cover (right hand side cover), as encircled in the figure. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

Continues on next page

Concluding procedure

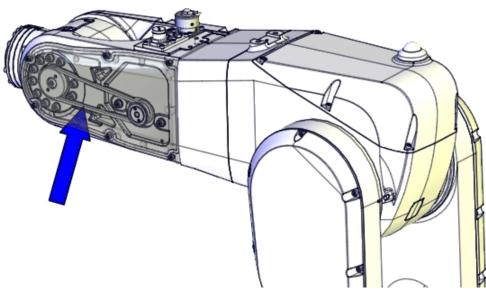
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt

4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt

Location of the timing belt

The axis-5 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx140000032

Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt	3HAC044657-001	
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol

Continues	on	next	page
-----------	----	------	------

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243 For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Sealant	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the refer- ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <i>Reference calibration</i> <i>routine on page 824</i> .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

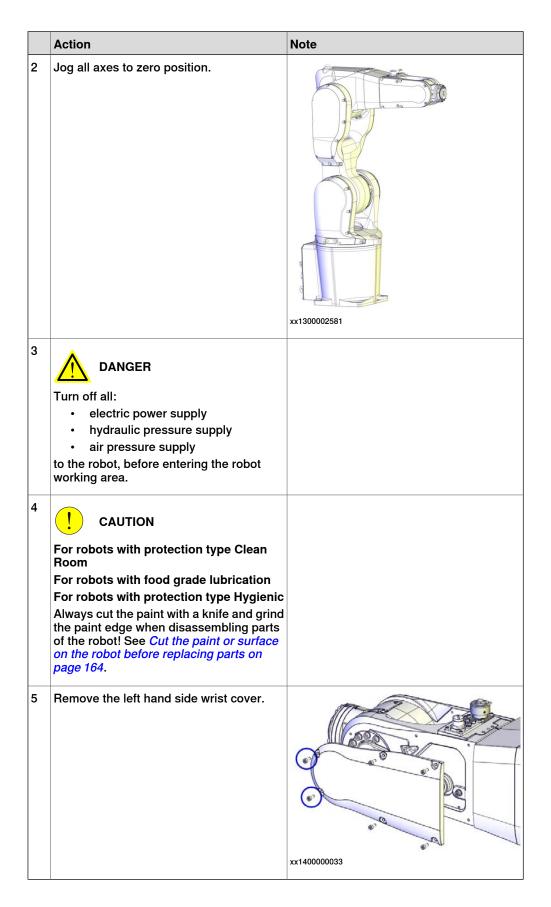
Removing the timing belt

Use these procedures to remove the axis-5 timing belt.

Preparations before removing the timing belt

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	

4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt *Continued*



Removing the axis-5 timing belt

	ming beit			
	Action	Note		
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.			
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.			
3	Loosen the screws so that the motor can be moved sideways.	хх130002350		
4	Remove the timing belt.	xx130002351		

4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt *Continued*

Refitting the timing belt

Use these procedures to refit the axis-5 timing belt.

Refitting the axis-5 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xx130002351
3	Move the motor to achieve correct belt tension ($F = 26 \text{ N}$).	Belt tension: F = 26 N.
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	xx130002350
		Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

Concluding procedure

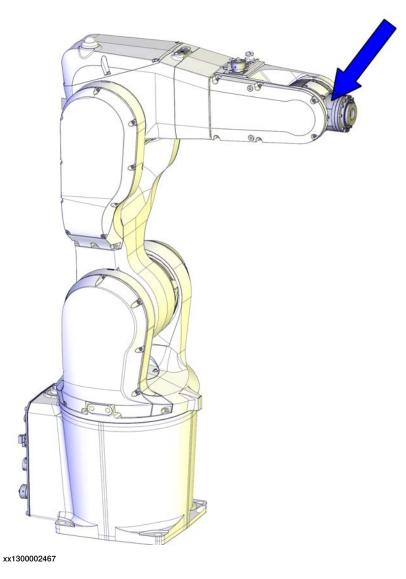
re				
	Action	Note		
1	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the gasket of the wrist cover. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001		
2	Refit the cover to the wrist. For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Apply locking liquid Loctite 243 to the two front screws on the left hand side cover, encircled in the figure.	Screws: 3HAB3409-207 (M3x8). Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.		
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.			
4	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in section <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .		

4.6.8 Replacing the axis-5 timing belt *Continued*

Action	Note
DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

Location of the drive unit

The drive unit of axis-5 and axis-6 is located as shown in the figure.



Required spare parts



The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 1200 via myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

Spare part	Art. no.	Note
Drive unit		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.

Spare part	Art. no.	Note
Drive unit, Clean Room	3HAC059707-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
Drive unit, food grade lubrica- tion	3HAC057907-001	Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
Drive unit, Hygienic	3HAC079694-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
Drive unit, SafeMove 2-sup- ported	3HAC061279-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on</i> <i>page 882</i> .
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
Drive unit, Clean Room and SafeMove 2-supported	3HAC061280-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on</i> <i>page 882</i> .
		Used with protection type Clean Room.
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
Drive unit, food grade lubrica- tion	3HAC061281-001	Used for IRB 1200 Type B. See <i>Type B of IRB 1200 on</i> <i>page 882</i> .
		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
		Includes axis-5 gear unit and axis-6 drive train unit.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-008	Used with protection class IP67.
		Used with protection type Foundry Plus.
		Replace if damaged.
M2 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-009	Used with protection class IP67 and protection type Foundry Plus.
		Replace if damaged.
Radial sealing	3HAB3701-42	Not used with protection class IP40 and protection type Hy- gienic.
Sleeve	3HAC044661-001	Replace if damaged. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cover	3HAC080709-001	Not used with protection class
Casher for tubular COVER	01140000103-001	IP40. Replace if damaged.
Gasket for tubular cable housing cover	3HAC080701-001	Not used with protection class IP40.
		Replace if damaged.

Spare part	Art. no.	Note
Tubular cable housing	3HAC059695-001	
Tubular cable housing, Clean Room	3HAC056143-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication.
Tubular cable housing, Hy- gienic	3HAC079692-001	Used with protection type Hy- gienic.
Protection cover for axis-6 turning disk	3HAC044666-001	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.
T40 variseal sealing	3HAC044641-012	Used with protection type Foundry Plus. Replace if damaged.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5)	3HAC049706-001	Always use three guide pins together!
Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set	3HAC049701-001	Used to refit the radial sealing, if re- placement is needed.
Calibration toolkit, manual calibration	3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and at- tachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <i>Standard toolkit on page 898</i> .
Flange tightening tool	3HAC079686-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic Used for loosen and tighten the seal ring unit on tool flange of the Hygienic robots.
Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange	3HAC079684-001	Used with robots in protection type Hygienic

i The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Loctite 7063
Locking liquid	3HAB7116-1	Loctite 243
Flange sealing	12340011-116	Loctite 574
		For robots with protection class IP67
		For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
Flange sealing	3HAC026759-003	Sikaflex 521FC

Continues on next page

Consumable	Art. no.	Note
Flange sealing	3HAC073510-001	Trans Clear For robots with protection type Hygienic
Grease	3HAC070875-001	Molykote P1900 For robots with protection type Hygienic

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

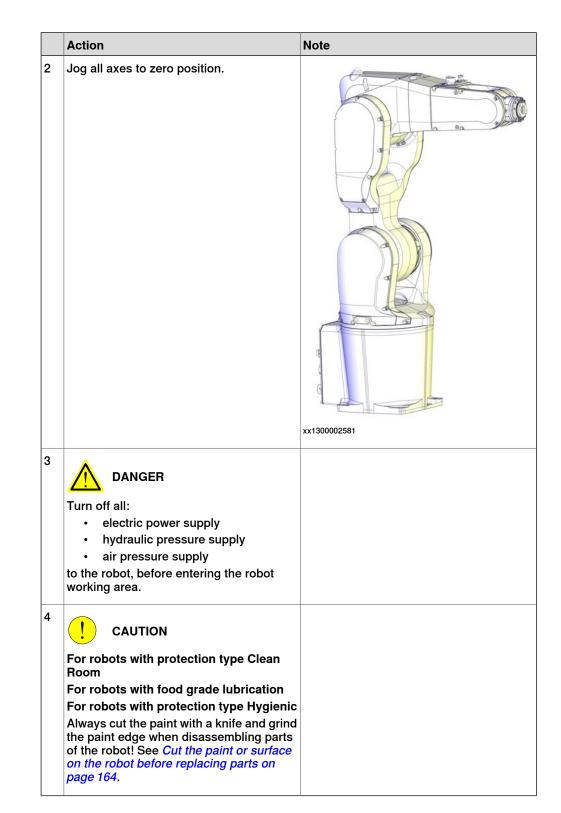
	Action	Note
1	 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	Note
	If the robot is to be calibrated with refer- ence calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These val- ues are to be used after the repair proced- ure is completed, for calibration of the ro- bot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	ence calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Removing the drive unit

Use these procedures to remove the drive unit.

Preparations before removing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit

	Action	Note
	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to begin- ning the repair procedure.	



Getting access to inside of the wrist unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	

	Action	Note
}	Remove the covers on each side of the wrist by removing their screws.	
	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus The two front screws on the left hand side cover (encircled in the figure) have been fitted with locking liquid. The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus
	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication The tubular cover (left hand side cover) has two extra screws and washers, as encircled in the figure.	For robots with protection type Clean Room
	For robots with protection type Hygienic The tubular cover (right hand side cover) has two extra screws, as encircled in the figure. Do not remove the two screws when removing the cover. The screws are used for blocking the screw holes rather than fixing the cover to the tubular. Replace if damaged or missing.	
		xx2100001406

Removing the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	! CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Snap loose and disconnect the axis-5 FPC connectors.	xt1300002390
4	Remove the connector plate by first removing the screws.	xx1300002391
5	Remove the cable housing of the tubular by first removing the screws. Note For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic The frame is glued and needs to be pried off.	xx1300002392

Removing the axis-5 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

	Action	Note
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Remove the sleeve screws.	xx1300022393
4	Remove the sleeve by screwing in two of the screws into the press out holes to force the sleeve out.	xx1300002582
5	Remove the FPC unit attachment screws and pull out the FPC unit as far as required for the axis-6 motor connectors to be accessed.	xx130002394

4.6.9 Replacing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit Continued

	Action	Note
6	Disconnect the axis-6 motor connectors and re- move the FPC unit completely.	xx1300002395

Removing the drive unit

	Action	Note
1	DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	CAUTION For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 164.	
3	Loosen the attachment screws of the axis-5 motor so that the motor can slide sideways.	xx1300002350
4	Slide the motor sideways to release the tension of the timing belt, and remove the timing belt.	xx1300002351

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
5	Support the weight of the drive unit and remove the screws.	xx130002469
6	Fit guide pins to the gearbox.	Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5): 3HAC049706-001
		Always use three guide pins togeth- er!
		xx1400000775
7	Remove the drive unit.	х130002470

Refitting the drive unit

Use these procedures to refit the drive unit.

Checking the sealing set on tool flange of Hygienic robots

	Action	Note
1	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

793

	Action	Note
2	Check the gasket (A), seal ring unit (B) and stainless shaft (C) on the tool flange. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	A B C A
3	Remove the screws and washers.	xx2100001449
4	Insert two M4 screws to the pressed out holes and press out the stainless shaft.	xx2100001451
5	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and loosen the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
6	Remove the gasket and seal ring unit.	xx2100001453
7	Replace the damaged parts with new ones.	
8	Apply a little grease to the screw thread.	Grease: Molykote P1900
9	Put the gasket in place and then screw the seal ring unit.	xx2100001455
		xx2100001455

	Action	Note
10	Place the flange tightening tool together with a 3/8" (10 mm) socket spanner on the seal ring unit and tighten the unit.	Flange tightening tool: 3HAC079686-001 Tightening torque: 8 Nm
11	Fit two guide pins to the tool flange.	Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange: 3HAC079684-001
12	Place the stainless shaft on the tool flange with guidance of the two guide pins. Make sure the pin hole on the shaft aligned with the pin on the tool flange.	xx2100001458
13	Secure with screws and washers.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

	Action	Note
14	Remove the guide pins.	
		xx2100001460

Refitting the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the protection cover for turning disk and T40 variseal sealing. Replace if damaged. Note When installing, make sure the notch on the pro- tection cover is aligned with the synchronization mark on the tool flange so that the notch could be used as the synchronization mark during calibra- tion.	Protection cover for axis-6 turning disk: 3HAC044666-001 T40 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 012 ***********************************

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641- 008
4	Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the drive unit. Note For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Wipe clean the overflowing sealant if there is any.	For robots not in protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear
5	Fit guide pins to the axis-5 gearbox.	Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5): 3HAC049706-001

	Action	Note
6	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Make sure the sealing to the tilt covers is intact before the refitting. For robots with protection type Hygienic Hygienic robots do not have tilt covers.	
		xx1600000219
		xx1600000220
7	Refit the drive unit and secure with the screws and washers. Secure the screws but do not tighten yet. Note If there is glue on the screw, please clean it or replace it with a new one.	Attachment screws: 3HAB3409-236 (M4x10).
		xx1300002569
		Note
		Only use specified screws, never replace them with other screws.
8	Remove the guide pins and refit the remaining screws and washers.	
		xx1300002570
		Continues on next page

	Action	Note
9	Cross-tighten all the screws with torque 1 Nm first, then with 2 Nm, with 4 Nm, and finally with 4.5 Nm.	

Refitting the axis-5 FPC unit

	Action	Note
1	WARNING It is important that axis 5 is in zero position when fitting the FPC unit. Make sure that the FPC is in zero position and does not get twisted during refitting.	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
3	Reconnect the axis-6 motor connectors to the FPC unit.	x130002395
4	Carefully refit the FPC unit and secure with screws. Note Check that the FPC unit is at the zero position when refitting it.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollutants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting sur- faces of the sleeve. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the over- flowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealing, Loctite 574 For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealing, Trans Clear
6	Refit the sleeve and secure with screws. Replace if damaged.	Sleeve: 3HAC044661-001 Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

Checking the tubular cable housing sealings

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	

	Action	Note
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Check the sealing. Replace if damaged. CAUTION Do not fit M2 variseal sealing on robots in other protection class or protection types.	M2 variseal sealing: 3HAC044641-009
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication Check the radial sealing. Replace if damaged, as described below. If undamaged and properly seated, skip to the next procedure table.	Radial sealing: 3HAB3701-42
4	Apply a little grease to the sealing when replacing the radial sealing and wipe clean after the replacement.	
5	Fit the radial sealing into the tubular cable housing.	
6	Fit the circular part of the radial sealing assembly tool against the radial sealing.	Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set: 3HAC049701-001
7	Fit the tool plate to the other side of the tubular cable housing with the six screws M6x40.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
8	Screw the screws, little by little, to press the sealing into place.	<image/> <image/>
9	Remove the assembly tool.	
10	Check that the sealing is undamaged and properly fitted.	

Refitting the tubular cable housing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Hygienic Remove residual locking liquid and other pollut- ants with cleaning agent Loctite 7063. Apply flange sealing on the mounting surfaces of the tubular cable housing. Note For Hygienic robots, wipe clean the overflowing flange sealing if there is any.	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus Flange sealant, SikaFlex 521FC For robots with protection type Hygienic Flange sealant, Trans Clear

4 Repair

4.6.9 Replacing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the tubular cable housing with the screws.	Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm. Tubular cable housing: 3HAC059695-001
		Tubular cable housing, Clean Room
		Tubular cable housing, food grade lubrication
		: 3HAC056143-001
		Tubular cable housing, Hygienic: 3HAC079692-001
		x130002392
		xx1300002392

Securing the axis-5 motor and timing belt

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the timing belt on the pulley.	xt130002351
3	Move the motor to a position where a good timing belt tension is reached (F = 26 N).	Note Do not strech the timing belt too much!

	Action	Note
4	Secure the motor with its attachment screws.	
		xx1300002350
		Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm.

Refitting the connector plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Refit the connector plate and secure with the M3 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.
3	Secure the three M2.5 screws.	Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm.

4 Repair

4.6.9 Replacing the axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit *Continued*

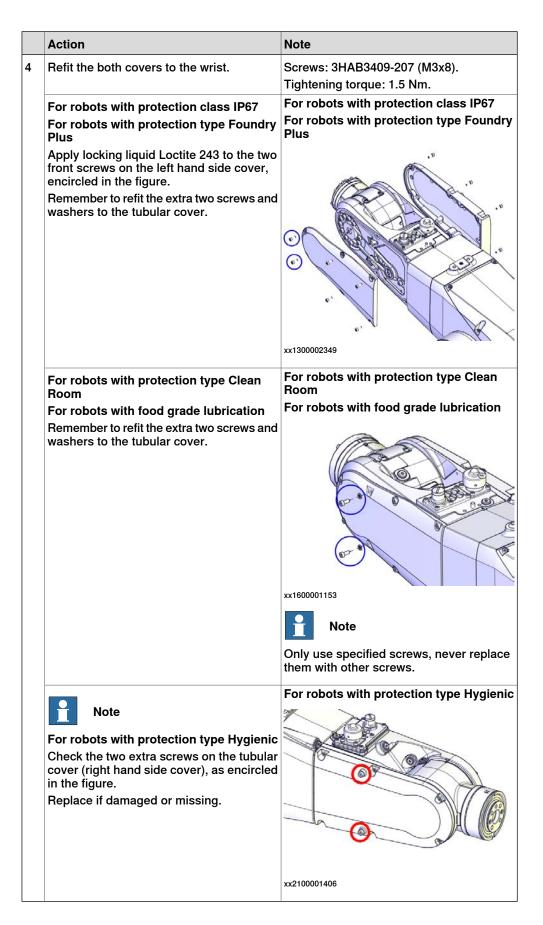
Connecting the axis-5 motor FPC connectors

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	Connect the axis-5 FPC connectors and snap them to their holders.	xx1300002390

Refitting the wrist covers

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room	
	For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free.	
2	For robots with protection class IP67	Gasket for tubular cover: 3HAC080709-001
	For robots with protection type Foundry Plus	
	For robots with protection type Clean Room	000000
	For robots with food grade lubrication	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Check the tubular cover gasket.	
	Replace if damaged.	
		xx140000034

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP67 For robots with protection type Foundry Plus For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Check the tubular cable housing cover gasket. Replace if damaged.	Gasket for tubular cable housing cover: 3HAC080701-001



Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room For robots with food grade lubrication For robots with protection type Hygienic Clean, seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <i>Cut the paint or surface</i> <i>on the robot before replacing parts on</i> <i>page 164.</i> Note After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration information is included in sec- tion <i>Calibration on page 811</i> .
3	DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test</i> <i>run after installation, maintenance, or repair</i> <i>on page 118.</i>	

This page is intentionally left blank

5 Calibration

5.1 Introduction to calibration

5.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology

Calibration information

This chapter includes general information about the recommended calibration methods and also the detailed procedures for updating the revolution counters, checking the calibration position etc.

Detailed instructions of how to perform Axis Calibration are given on the FlexPendant during the calibration procedure. To prepare calibration with Axis Calibration method, see *Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 823*.

Calibration terminology

Term	Definition
Calibration method	A collective term for several methods that might be available for calibrating the ABB robot. Each method contains calibration routines.
Synchronization position	Known position of the complete robot where the angle of each axis can be checked against visual synchronization marks.
Calibration position	Known position of the complete robot that is used for calibration of the robot.
Standard calibration	A generic term for all calibration methods that aim to move the robot to calibration position.
Fine calibration	A calibration routine that generates a new zero posi- tion of the robot.
Reference calibration	A calibration routine that in the first step generates a reference to current zero position of the robot. The same calibration routine can later on be used to re- calibrate the robot back to the same position as when the reference was stored.
	This routine is more flexible compared to fine calib- ration and is used when tools and process equipment are installed.
	Requires that a reference is created before being used for recalibrating the robot.
	Requires that the robot is dressed with the same tools and process equipment during calibration as during creation of the reference values.
Update revolution counter	A calibration routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis.
Synchronization mark	Visual marks on the robot axes. When marks are aligned, the robot is in synchronization position.

5 Calibration

5.1.2 Calibration methods

5.1.2 Calibration methods

Overview

This section specifies the different types of calibration and the calibration methods that are supplied by ABB.

Types of calibration

Type of calibration	Description	Calibration method
Standard calibration	The calibrated robot is positioned at calibration position. Standard calibration data is found on the SMB (serial measurement board) or EIB in the robot. For robots with RobotWare 5.04 or older, the calibration data is delivered in a file, calib.cfg, supplied with the robot at delivery. The file identifies the correct resolver/motor position corresponding to the robot home position.	Axis Calibration or manual calibration ⁱ
Absolute accuracy calibration (option- al)	 Based on standard calibration, and besides positioning the robot at synchronization position, the Absolute accuracy calibration also compensates for: Mechanical tolerances in the robot structure Deflection due to load 	CalibWare
	Absolute accuracy calibration focuses on pos- itioning accuracy in the Cartesian coordinate system for the robot.	
	Absolute accuracy calibration data is found on the serial measurement board (SMB) or other robot memory.	
	For robots with RobotWare 5.05 or older, the absolute accuracy calibration data is delivered in a file, absacc.cfg, supplied with the robot at delivery. The file replaces the calib.cfg file and identifies motor positions as well as absolute accuracy compensation parameters.	
	A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has a sticker next to the identification plate of the robot (IRC5).	
	A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has the option information printed on its name plate (OmniCore).	
	To regain 100% Absolute accuracy perform- ance, the robot must be recalibrated for abso- lute accuracy after repair or maintenance that affects the mechanical structure.	
	ABSOLUTE ACCURACY	
	xx0400001197	

5.1.2 Calibration methods *Continued*

Type of calibration	Description	Calibration method
Optimization	Optimization of TCP reorientation perform- ance. The purpose is to improve reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like weld- ing and gluing.	Wrist Optimization
	Wrist optimization will update standard calib- ration data for axes 4 and 5.	

¹ The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory. Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Brief description of calibration methods

Axis Calibration method

Axis Calibration is a standard calibration method for calibration of IRB 1200. It is the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

The following routines are available for the Axis Calibration method:

- Fine calibration
- · Update revolution counters
- Reference calibration

The calibration equipment for Axis Calibration is delivered as a toolkit.

An introduction to the calibration method is given in this manual, see *Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 823*.

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Wrist Optimization method

Wrist Optimization is a method for improving reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like welding and gluing and is a complement to the standard calibration method.

The actual instructions of how to perform the wrist optimization procedure is given on the FlexPendant.

Manual calibration method

With the manual calibration method, the robot's axes are positioned in specific calibration positions using calibration tools. Under this condition, the position of the axis to be calibrated is pre-determined. The axes must be calibrated one at a time.

CalibWare - Absolute Accuracy calibration

The CalibWare tool guides through the calibration process and calculates new compensation parameters. This is further detailed in the *Application manual - CalibWare Field*.

If a service operation is done to a robot with the option Absolute Accuracy, a new absolute accuracy calibration is required in order to establish full performance. For most cases after replacements that do not include taking apart the robot structure, standard calibration is sufficient.

Continues on next page

813

5 Calibration

5.1.2 Calibration methods *Continued*

The Absolute Accuracy option varies according to the robot mounting position. This is printed on the robot name plate for each robot. The robot must be in the correct mounting position when it is recalibrated for absolute accuracy.

References

Article numbers for the calibration tools are listed in the section *Special tools on page 899*.

5.1.3 When to calibrate

5.1.3 When to calibrate

When to calibrate

The system must be calibrated if any of the following situations occur.

The resolver values are changed

If resolver values are changed, the robot must be re-calibrated using the calibration methods supplied by ABB. Calibrate the robot carefully with standard calibration, according to information in this manual.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it is also recommended, but not always necessary to calibrate for new absolute accuracy.

The resolver values will change when parts affecting the calibration position are replaced on the robot, for example motors or parts of the transmission.

The revolution counter memory is lost

If the revolution counter memory is lost, the counters must be updated. See *Updating revolution counters on page 819*. This will occur when:

- · The battery is discharged
- A resolver error occurs
- The signal between a resolver and measurement board is interrupted
- · A robot axis is moved with the control system disconnected

The revolution counters must also be updated after the robot and controller are connected at the first installation.

The robot is rebuilt

If the robot is rebuilt, for example, after a crash or when the reachability of a robot is changed, it needs to be re-calibrated for new resolver values.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it needs to be calibrated for new absolute accuracy.

Robot is not floor mounted

The original calibration data delivered with the robot is generated when the robot is floor mounted. If the robot is not floor mounted, then the robot accuracy could be affected. The robot needs to be calibrated after it is mounted.

5.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

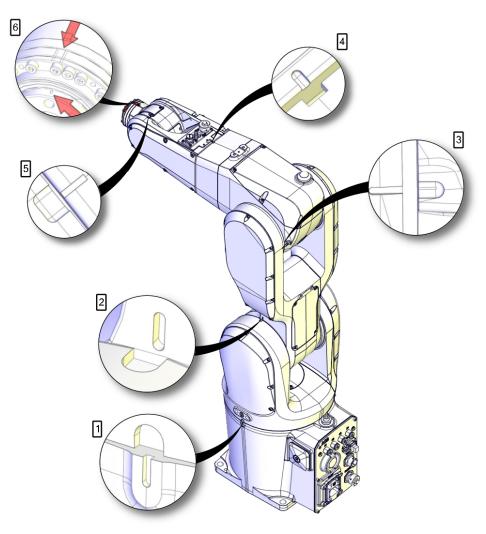
5.2 Synchronization marks and axis movement directions

5.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

Introduction

This section shows the position of the synchronization marks and the synchronization position for each axis.

Synchronization marks, IRB 1200

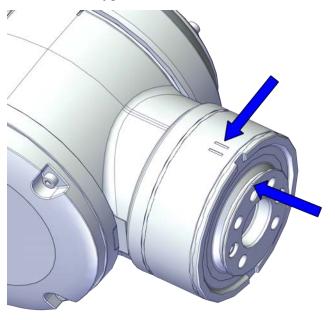


xx1400000402

Continues on next page 816

5.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes *Continued*

Synchronization marks at axis 6 on Hygienic robots



xx2100001464

5 Calibration

5.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

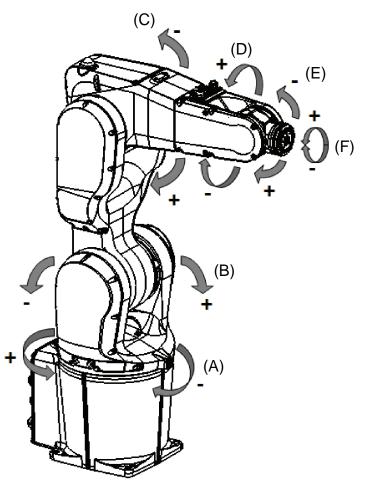
5.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

Overview

When calibrating, the axis must consistently be run towards the calibration position in the same direction in order to avoid position errors caused by backlash in gears and so on. Positive directions are shown in the graphic below.

Calibration service routines will handle the calibration movements automatically and these might be different from the positive directions shown below.

Manual movement directions



xx1300000365

Posi- tion	Description	Posi- tion	Description
Α	Axis 1	в	Axis 2
С	Axis 3	D	Axis 4
E	Axis 5	F	Axis 6

5.3 Updating revolution counters

5.3.1 Updating revolution counters on IRC5 robots

Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Select axis-by-axis motion mode.	
2	Jog the manipulator to align the synchron- ization marks.	See Synchronization marks and synchron- ization position for axes on page 816.
3	When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter.	Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 819.

Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (IRC5).

Actio	n				
On the	e ABB menu,	tap Calibratior	ı.		
		Manual sbb_robcal_Bui (II	N-L-BTGIS)	Motors On Stopped (Speed 100%)	X
t	HotEdit			Backup and Restore	4
	了 Inputs a	nd Outputs	ddddd-	Calibration	1. Vi
	ogging		<i>Z</i>	Control Panel	
	Productio	on Window	ŕ	Event Log	1
	撁 Program	Editor		FlexPendant Explorer	
4	Program	Data		System Info	2
					-
					=
	🔑 Log Off D	efault User	0	Restart	-
xx15000	00942				

5.3.1 Updating revolution counters on IRC5 robots *Continued*

	Action					
2	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status. Tap the mechanical unit in question.					
	Calibration	Manual sbb_robcal_Bui (IN-L-BTGIS)	Motors On Stopped (Speed 100%)	X		
		In order to use the system all mechanical units must be calibrated.				
		elect the mechanical unit you want to calibrate.				
	Mechanical Unit	Calibrated		1 to 1 of 1		
	xx1500000943					
3	Calibration method	last field calibration.	er. kis is shown, as well as cal	ibration		
		Manual sbb_robcal_Bui (IN-L-BTGIS)	Motors On Stopped (Speed 100%)	X I		
	Calibration - ROB_1					
	Calibration Method	Overview				
	Axis	Factory Method Used	Latest Method Used			
	rob1_1	Axis Calibration	Axis Calibration			
	rob1_2	Axis Calibration	Manual			
	rob1_3	Axis Calibration	Manual			
	rob1_4	Axis Calibration	Axis Calibration			
	rob1_5	Axis Calibration	Axis Calibration			
	rob1_6	Axis Calibration	Manual			
	Manual Method (Advanced)		Run Calibration Method	Close		
	Calibration					
	xx1500000944					

Continues on next page

5 Calibration

5.3.1 Updating revolution counters on IRC5 robots *Continued*

	Action			
4	A screen is displaye	d, tap Rev. Counte r	ſS.	
		anual	Motors On Stannad (2 of 2) (Speed 100%)	X X
	Calibration - ROB_1	ySystem (RSTEST4)	Stopped (2 of 2) (Speed 100%)	
			Revolution Counters	
	E	Opulate	Revolution Councersin	
	Rev. Counters	1		
	e a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a			
	Calib. Parameters			
	SMB Memory			
	Змв меню у			
	L.			
	Base Frame			
				Close
	Calibration			ROB_1
				1/3 🕤
	en0400000771			
5	Tap Update Revolut		updating the revolution coun	tore may change
	programmed robot p			ters may change
		date the revolution		
	• Tap No to can Tapping Yes display	cel updating the re s the axis selection		
6	Select the axis to ha			
	Ticking in the	box to the left		
	 Tapping Select Then tap Update. 	ct all to update all a	xes.	
7		aved warning that	he updating operation canno	ot be undone:
ľ	 Tap Update to 	proceed with upda	ting the revolution counters.	
			e revolution counters. evolution counters and remo	ves the tick from
	the list of axes.			
8				
	If a revolution counter tioning, which in turr		ated, it will cause incorrect n	nanipulator posi-
	-		e or injury: carefully after each update.	See Checking
	the synchronization			3

5.3.2 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

5.3.2 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Select axis-by-axis motion mode.	
2	Jog the manipulator to align the synchron- ization marks.	See Synchronization marks and synchron- ization position for axes on page 816.
3	When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter.	Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 822.

Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (OmniCore).

	Action
1	On the start screen, tap Calibrate . The calibration summary page for the mechanical unit is displayed.
2	In the Calibration Methods menu, select Revolution Counters.
3	In the Selection column select the axes for which revolution counters need to be up- dated.
4	Tap Update . A dialog box is displayed warning that the updating operation cannot be undone.
5	Tap OK to update the revolution counter.
6	CAUTION If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury! Check the synchronization position very carefully after each update. See <i>Checking the synchronization position on page 870</i> .

5.4 Calibrating with Axis Calibration method

5.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

Instructions for Axis Calibration procedure given on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

This manual contains a brief description of the method, additional information to the information given on the FlexPendant, article number for the tools and images of where to fit the calibration tools on the robot.

Overview of the Axis Calibration procedure

The Axis Calibration procedure applies to all axes, and is performed on one axis at the time. The robot axes are both manually and automatically moved into position, as instructed on the FlexPendant.

Bushings are installed on each robot axis at delivery, for installation of the calibration tools. For axis 6 calibration there is one bushing on the wrist and one mounting hole on the tool flange.

The Axis Calibration procedure described roughly:

1 A removable calibration tool is inserted by the operator into a calibration bushing on the axis chosen for calibration, according to instructions on the FlexPendant.



Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.



WARNING

The calibration tool must be fully inserted into the calibration bushing, until the steel spring ring snaps into place.

2 During the calibration procedure, RobotWare moves the robot axis chosen for calibration so that the calibration tools get into contact. RobotWare records values of the axis position and repeats the coming-in-contact procedure several times to get an exact value of the axis position.



Risk of pinching! The contact force for large robots can be up to 150 kg. Keep a safe distance to the robot.

5 Calibration

5.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration *Continued*

3 The axis position is stored in RobotWare with an active choice from the operator.

Routines in the calibration procedure

The following routines are available in the Axis Calibration procedure, given at the beginning of the procedure on the FlexPendant.

Fine calibration routine

Choose this routine to calibrate the robot when there are no tools, process cabling or equipment fitted to the robot.

Reference calibration routine

Choose this routine to create reference values and to calibrate the robot when the robot is dressed with tools, process cabling or other equipment.

Also choose this routine if the robot is wall mounted or suspended.



When calibrating the robot with the reference calibration routine, the robot must be dressed with the same tools, process cabling and any other equipment as when the reference values were created.



en using reference calibration with some tools, typica

When using reference calibration with some tools, typically large or flexible tools, oscillations in the robot can cause issues leading to failure of the calibration.

If calibrating the robot with reference calibration there must be reference values created before repair is made to the robot, if values are not already available. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. The reference values contain positions of all axes, torque of axes and technical data about the tool installed. A benefit with reference calibration is that the current state of the robot is stored and not the state when the robot left the ABB factory. The reference value will be named according to tool name, date etc.

Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

When reference calibration is performed, the robot is restored to the status given by the reference values.

Update revolution counters

Choose this routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Validation

In the mentioned routines, it is also possible to validate the calibration data.

5.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration *Continued*

Position of robot axes

The robot axes should be positioned close to 0 degrees before commencing the calibration program. The axis chosen for calibration is then automatically run by the calibration program to its exact calibration position during the calibration procedure.

It is possible to position some of the other axes in positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are allowed to be jogged is given on the FlexPendant. These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window. Also the following table shows the dependencies between the axes.

Requirements for axis positioning during calibration

	Axis to c	alibrate				
Required position o axis	Axis 1 f	Axis 2	Axis 3	Axis 4	Axis 5	Axis 6
Axis 1	-	*	*	*	*	*
Axis 2	0	-	0	*	*	*
Axis 3	0	0	-	*	*	*
Axis 4	*	*	*	-	*	*
Axis 5	*	*	*	*	-	x
Axis 6	*	*	*	*	*	-
-	Axis to be c	alibrated				
*	Unrestricted	I. Axis is allow	wed to be jog	ged to other	position than	0 degrees.
0	Axis must be put in position 0 degrees.					
Х	Special requ	uirement				

System containing SafeMove

SafeMove will lose its synchronization to the controller if a new calibration is done. New calibration values have to be downloaded to SafeMove, and a new SafeMove calibration has to be done. Make sure that the user rights admit to change the safety settings and to synchronize SafeMove.

For robots with EPS, the same applies as for SafeMove.

How to calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot

The IRB 1200 is fine calibrated floor standing in factory, prior to shipping. To calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot, reference calibration could be used. Reference values for a suspended or a wall mounted robot must be created with the robot mounted at its working position, not standing on a floor.

To calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot with the fine calibration routine, the robot must first be taken down and mounted standing on the floor.

5.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

5.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

Calibration tool set

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.

The calibration tool will eventually break from fatigue after longer period of use and then needs to be replaced. There is no risk for bad calibrations as long as the calibration tool is in one piece.



Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calib- ration method for the robot. ⁱ
		The tool box also includes a unique calibra- tion pin for IRB 1200 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at ABB factory before delivery. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory. Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Examining the calibration tool

i

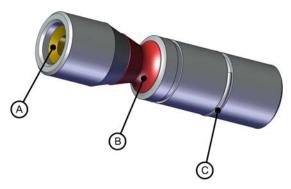
Check prior to usage

Before using the calibration tool, make sure that the tube insert, the plastic protection and the steel spring ring are present.



If any part is missing or damaged, the tool must be replaced immediately.

5.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration Continued



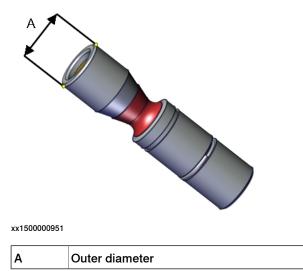
xx1500001914

Α	Tube insert
в	Plastic protection
С	Steel spring ring

Periodic check of the calibration tool

If including the calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within Ø12g4 mm, Ø8g4 mm or Ø6g5 mm (depending on calibration tool size).
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.



Periodic check of the calibration tool for the tool flange (3HAC058238-001)

If including the tool flange calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within Ø5g5 mm.
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.

5.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration *Continued*





5.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

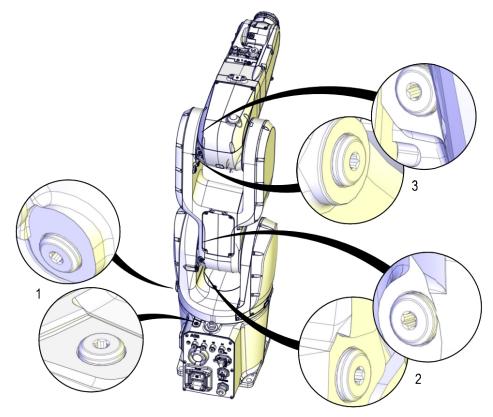
Location of fixed calibration items

This section shows how the robot is equipped with items for installation of calibration tools for Axis Calibration (fixed calibration pins and/or bushings). Installed calibration tools are not shown.

A fixed calibration pin and a bushing for the movable calibration tool are located on each axis as follows.

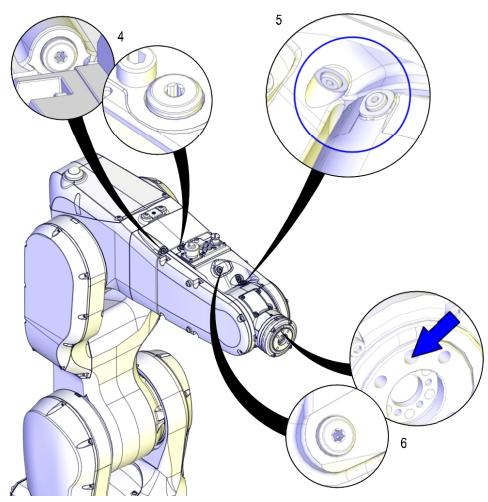
If there is not enough space on an axis to install a fixed calibration pin, the axis is equipped with two bushings instead, for installation of two calibration tools when calibration is carried out. This is shown in the figure.

For axis 6 there is only one bushing, the second calibration tool is installed at the mounting flange of the turning disk.



xx1600001035

5.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools *Continued*



xx1600001036

Spare parts

When calibration is not being performed, a protective plug should always be installed in the bushing. Replace damaged parts with new, if needed.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protective plug for bushing	3HAC059556-001	Replace if damaged or missing.
Protective plug for bushing, Clean Room	3HAC059557-001	Used with protection type Clean Room
Protective plug for bushing, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication
Protective plug for bushing, Hygien- ic		Used with protection type Hygien- ic
		Replace if damaged or missing.

5.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Required tools

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.



Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration holes may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. ⁱ The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for IRB 1200 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at ABB factory before delivery. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Clean cloth	-	

Spare parts

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protective plug for bushing	3HAC059556-001	Replace if damaged or missing.
Protective plug for bushing, Clean Room	3HAC059557-001	Used with protection type Clean Room
Protective plug for bushing, food grade lubrication		Used for robots with food grade lubrication
Protective plug for bushing, Hygien- ic		Used with protection type Hygien- ic
		Replace if damaged or missing.

Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure.

5.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure *Continued*

After the calibration method has been started on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

- 1 Choose calibration routine. The routines are described in *Routines in the calibration procedure on page 824*.
- 2 Choose which axis/axes to calibrate.
- 3 The robot moves to synchronization position.
- 4 Validate the synchronization marks.
- 5 The robot moves to preparation position.
- 6 Remove the protection plug from the bushings, and install the calibration tool.
- 7 The robot performs a measurement sequence by rotating the axis back and forth.
- 8 Remove the calibration tool and reinstall the protection plugs in the bushings.
- 9 The robot moves to verify that the calibration tool is removed.
- 10 Choose whether to save the calibration data or not.

Calibration of the robot is not finished until the calibration data is saved, as last step of the calibration procedure.

Preparation prior to calibration

The calibration procedure is described in the FlexPendant while conducting it.

	Action	Note
1		
	While conducting the calibration, the robot needs to be connected to power.	
	Make sure that the robot's working area is empty, as the robot can make unpredictable movements.	
2	Wipe the calibration tool clean.	Use a clean cloth.
	The calibration method is exact. Dust, dirt or color flakes will affect the calibration value.	
3	Check if the standard calibration data for axes 4 or 5 are updated with wrist optimization.	If the data is optimized, the calibra- tion routine Wrist Optimization
	This is shown in the calibration overview/summary window on the FlexPendant.	must be re-run after standard calib- ration.
		See Calibrating with Wrist Optimiza- tion method on page 839.

Starting the calibration procedure

Use this procedure to start the Axis Calibration routine on the FlexPendant.

	Action	Note
1	Tap the calibration icon and enter the calibration main page.	

832

	Action	Note
2	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status.	
	Tap the mechanical unit in question.	
	1 Note	
	For RobotWare 7, the mechanical unit page is displayed only if there is more than one mechanical unit available.	
3	The calibration method used at ABB factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used for the robot during last field calibration.	The FlexPendant will give all inform- ation needed to proceed with Axis Calibration.
4	Valid for RobotWare 6	
	Tap Call Calibration Method . The software will automatically call for the procedure for the valid calibration method. If not, tap Call Routine and then tap Axis calibration .	
5	Valid for RobotWare 7	
	Tap Calibration Methods on the right pane and then tap Calibration . The software will automatic- ally call for the procedure for the valid calibration method.	
6	Follow the instructions given on the FlexPendant.	A brief overview of the sequence that will be run on the FlexPendant is given in <i>Overview of the calibra-</i> <i>tion procedure on the FlexPendant</i> <i>on page 831</i> .

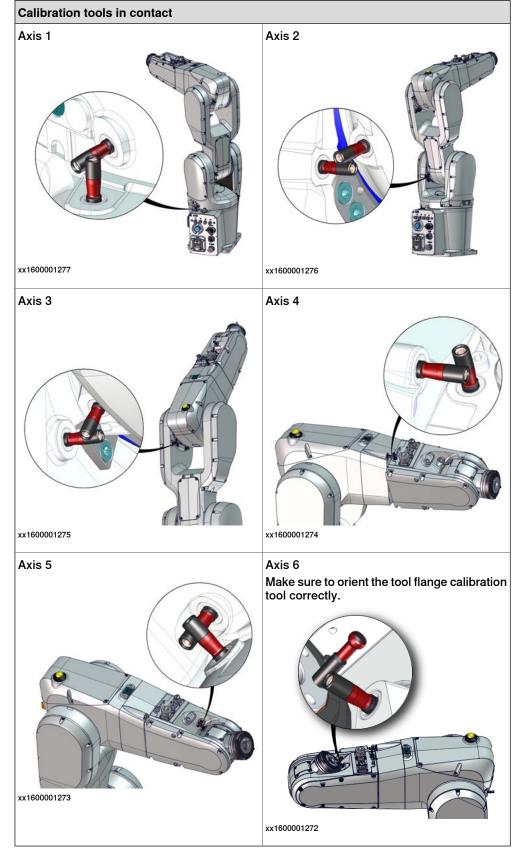
Fitting of calibration tools

The figures show the calibration tools in contact with each other on each axis.

The position of the complete robot shown for each axis is only an example.

In order for the axis to be able to be moved to calibration position, or in order for getting proper access to the calibration bushing, other axes might need to be jogged to positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are

5.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure *Continued*



allowed to be jogged will be given on the FlexPendant. These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window.

Restarting an interrupted calibration procedure

If the Axis Calibration procedure is interrupted before the calibration is finished, the RobotWare program needs to be started again. Use this procedure to take required action.

Situation	Action
The three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant has been released during robot movement.	Press and hold the three-position enabling device and press Play .
The RobotWare program is terminated with PP to Main .	Remove the calibration tool, if it is installed, and restart the calibration procedure from the beginning. See <i>Starting the calibration</i> <i>procedure</i> .
	If the calibration tool is in contact the robot axis needs to be jogged in order to release the calibration tool. Jogging the axis in wrong direction will cause the calibration tool to break. Directions of axis movement is shown in <i>Calibration movement directions for all</i> axes on page 818

Axis Calibration with SafeMove option

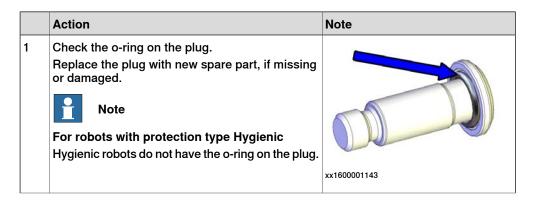
To be able to run Axis Calibration, SafeMove needs to be unsynchronized. The Axis Calibration routine recognizes if the robot is equipped with SafeMove and will force SafeMove to unsynchronize automatically.

However, SafeMove may generate other warning messages anytime during the Axis Calibration routine. When a warning message is displayed, tap **Acknowledge** to confirm the unsynchronized state and continue Axis Calibration procedure.



SafeMove must be synchronized after the calibration is completed.

After calibration



5.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Reinstall the protective plugs in both bushings on each axis, directly after the axis is calibrated.	
	Replace the plug with new spare part, if missing or damaged.	
	Note	
	For robots with protection type Hygienic	
	Do not forget the washer.	7
ing or damaged.	rieplace ale washer wanted opare part, it miss	xx1600001144
		Protective plug for bushing: 3HAC059556-001.
	Note	Protective plug for bushing, Clean Room
tightened with a tightening torque of	The protective plug on tilt unit (axis 5) shall be tightened with a tightening torque of 0.8 Nm. Do not over-tighten it.	Protective plug for bushing, food grade lubrication
		Protective plug for bushing, Hygien- ic
		: 3HAC059557-001.
3	If the standard calibration data for axes 4, 5 or 6 should be updated with wrist optimization, run the calibration routine Wrist Optimization .	

5.4.5 Reference calibration

Brief introduction to Reference Calibration

Reference calibration is a faster method compared to Fine calibration, as it refers to a previously made calibration.

- 1 Create a backup of the current robot system.
- 2 Check that the active calibration offset values corresponds to the values on the calibration label (located on the lower arm or the base).
- 3 Jog the manipulator so that all axes are in zero position (ex use MoveAbsJ instruction). Check that all axis scales are aligned with calibration marks.
- 4 If the scales differ from calibration marks it might depend on wrong turns of the revolution counters. Make a marker line on the corresponding axis to be able to validate the result of the calibration. If more than one motor revolutions are wrong, the calibration will fail.
- 5 Use a verification position. This is especially recommended if all axes were not aligned with the synchronization marks (step 3). Reuse an existing position that is suitable and accurate so it can be used to validate the repair. Use a position where a deviation in axis calibration gives a big deviation in positioning. Note! Check the position after each repair in one axis.
- 6 Use Reference calibration to save reference values for all axes that is to be replaced. Make sure that the values are saved in RobotStudio or FTP program. The files are located in "Active system folder name/HOME/RefCalibFiles".
- 7 Perform the repair.
- 8 Make sure that the tooling and process equipment are the same as when creating the reference. Use Reference calibration to update the system with new calibration offset value for the repaired axis.
- 9 Check the position against the verification position (step 5).
- 10 Proceed with the repair of the next axis, if necessary, and repeat (step 8-9) for every axis.
- 11 (For system containing SafeMove or EPS) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.(For system containing SafeMove) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.
- 12 (For system containing SafeMove or EPS) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.(For system containing SafeMove) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.
- 13 Perform test run.
- 14 Update the calibration label with new resolver values (calibration values).

Manual tuning of calibration offset

Manual tuning of calibration offset is normally not needed, but can be useful in some situations. The requirement to do manual tuning is that there is a known accurate position, that worked accurately before the repair (step 5, see *Brief introduction to Reference Calibration on page 837*).

5.4.5 Reference calibration *Continued*

Example "Adjust axis 4":

- 1 Create a backup.
- 2 Run the manipulator to the verification position. (The manipulator position is now deviating from the verification position.)
- 3 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 96.3 degrees).
- 4 Manually jog, only axis 4, so that the manipulator is correctly positioned to the verification position.
- 5 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 94.2 degrees).
- 6 Move the manipulator to its calibration position.
- 7 Calculate the angle difference (ie 96.3-94.2=2.1 degrees).
- 8 Manually jog axis 4 the calculated angle difference (-2.1). NOTE! The direction +/- shall be the same direction as the direction used when axis 4 was manually jogged to coincide with the verification process. In the example -2.1 degrees.
- 9 Make a new manual fine calibration of axis 4 with axis in -2.1 degrees position.
- 10 Check again against the verification position.
- 11 Repeat the manual tuning if needed.
- 12 Create a new reference if the intention is to use the reference in the future.

5.5 Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method

When to run Wrist Optimization

Wrist Optimization routine is run to improve TCP reorientation performance. Calibrating the robot with standard calibration method overwrites the optimized positions of axes 4, 5. Re-run the **Wrist Optimization** routine after standard

calibration to re-achieve the optimized positions of the wrist axes.

Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure sequence.

After the calibration method has been called for on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

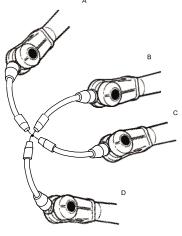
- 1 Choose calibration routine Wrist Optimization.
- 2 Modify targets for 4-point tool frame definition, in Wrist Optimization routine.



Select positions with large reorientations around the TCP. For best results, make sure that axis 4 and 5 have large movements.

- a Jog the robot to an appropriate position, A, for the first approach point.
 Use small increments to accurately position the tool tip as close to the reference point as possible.
- b Tap Modify Position to define the point.

Repeat for each approach point to be defined, positions B, C, and D.
 Jog away from the fixed world point to achieve the best result. Just changing the tool orientation will not give as good a result.



en0400000906

- 3 Improved calibration data to the wrist axes is identified and presented.
- 4 Optimized positions for the wrist axes are presented.

5.5 Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method *Continued*

5 The robot moves to the optimized positions for the wrist axes and automatically overwrites previous calibration data.



Robot moves automatically when pressing Calibrate.

- 6 Wrist optimization is finished.
- 7 Redefine / verify TCP for all tools.

5.6 Calibrating with manual calibration method

5.6.1 Manual calibration method - calibration position

Calibration position

The position of the axis to be calibrated is illustrated in each calibration section respectively.

Axis	IRB 1200-5/0.9	IRB 1200-7/0.7
АЛІЗ	IIID 1200-5/0.9	110 1200-1/0.7
1	+84.474066°	+84.474066°
2	+131.862755 [°]	+136.862755 [°]
3	+72.250000º	+72.250000º
4	0º	0 <u>°</u>
5	-90º	-90º
6	0º	0 <u>°</u>

The table below specifies the exact axis positions in degrees.

5.6.2 Manual calibration method - content of calibration toolkit 3HAC051256-001

5.6.2 Manual calibration method - content of calibration toolkit 3HAC051256-001

Content in calibration toolkit 3HAC051256-001	Art. no.	Note
Calibration pin, axis 1	3HAC051209-001	
Calibration stop pin, axis 1	3HAC051211-001	
Calibration tool, axis 4	3HAC051212-001	
Calibration tool, axes 5 and 6	3HAC051213-001	
Conical screw M3	3HAC055410-001	Used together with the calibration tool, axis 4.
Guide pin	3HAC034513-001	Used together with the calibration tool, axis 5/6.
Calibration block with pin	3HAC051254-001	Fitted on tubular.
Hex socket head screw	9ADA183-19	M5x40
Hex socket head screw	9ADA183-41	M8x45
Hex socket head screw	9ADA183-15	M5x20
Hex socket head screw	9ADA183-5	M4x16
Hex socket head screw	9ADA183-14	M5x16

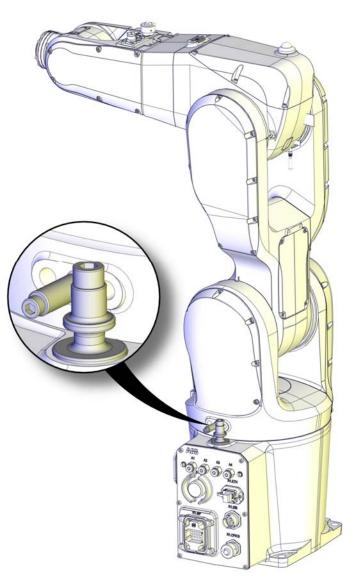
Content of calibration toolkit 3HAC051256-001

5.6.3 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1

5.6.3 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1

Calibration position of axis 1

The figure shows axis 1 in calibration position, with calibration tools fitted.



xx1400001209

Required equipment

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Calibration toolkit, manual calibra- tion		Includes calibration tools, pins and attachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ

5.6.3 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1 *Continued*

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Protection plug	3HAC051199-001	Protection plug for the calibration hole in the swing (the hole is used during calibration of axis 1 with the manual calibration method). Replace if damaged.

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol

Calibrating axis 1

Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position.	
2	Remove the axis-1 mechanical stop pin.	xx140000392

	Action	Note
3	The axis-1 calibration stop pin should now be fit- ted to the mechanical stop pin attachment hole, but it does not fit if the axis 1 stands in its zero position. Jog axis 1 to find a suitable position where the axis-1 calibration stop pin can be fitted to the at- tachment hole in the base. Fit the axis-1 calibration stop pin to the base and secure it with the screw.	Screw: M8x45. Tightening torque: 10 Nm. Note The position of the robot shown in the figure, is only a suggestion. The suitable position in which the axis-1 calibration pin is possible to fit may differ. Image: State Stat
4	Jog axis 1 to zero position.	
5	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
6	Remove the protection plug from the swing.	xx1400001134

	Action	Note
7	Fit the axis-1 calibration pin to the swing and secure it with the screw. CAUTION Hold the calibration pin firmly with your hands while securing it with the screw, in order to keep a straight line when fitting the screw. The calibra- tion pin must not be tilted.	Screw: M5x40. TighteningTorque: 5 Nm.
8	Turn on the electric power to the robot.	
9	DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unex- pected ways! Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	
10	Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 1 until the two axis-1 calibration pins touches each other gently. There should be no pressing force between the pins. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision. When the axis is in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	How to release the brakes is de- tailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 74.

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
	Action	NOTE
1	WARNING Do not fine calibrate the robot without special equipment used for axis calibration! It would cause an unsatisfied accuracy in the robot movement.	
2	Choose fine calibration from Calib menu On the ABB menu, tap Calibration . All mechanical units connected to the system are shown along with their calibration status.	
3	Tap to select the mechanical unit and then tap Ca	alib. Parameters.
	Manual Motors of Stopped Calibration - ROB_1 Load Motor Calibration Rev. Counters Edit Motor Calibration Calib. Parameters Fine Calibration SMB Memory SMB Memory Lase Frame Manual	ration
		Close
	Calibration en0400001127	ROB 1
4	Tap Fine Calibration	
	A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use ex- ternal equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated. A dialog box is displayed, warning that updating the revolution counters may change programmed robot positions: • Tap Yes to proceed. • Tap No to cancel.	
5	Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.	

	Action	Note
6	Tap Calibrate.	
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. 	
	Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.	
	The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.	

Checking and finalizing the calibration

	Action	Note
1	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jog- ging.	
2	Jog axis 1 to zero degree using the FlexPendant.	
3	 Check that the synchronization marks on axis 1 are aligned with eachother. Are they aligned within the tolerances? If yes, the calibration is verified OK. If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	xx1400001092
4	Remove the axis-1 calibration pin from the swing and refit the protection plug.	Protection plug: 3HAC051199-001
5	Rotate axis 1 to a suitable position to get access and remove the calibration stop pin from the base.	
6	Remove the axis-1 calibration stop pin from the base and refit the axis-1 mechanical stop.	Tightening torque: 12 Nm

5.6.3 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 1 *Continued*

After calibration

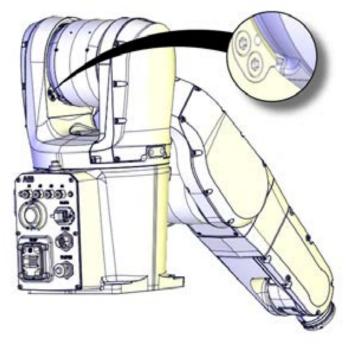
Action	Note
Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	

5.6.4 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 2

5.6.4 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 2

Calibration position of axis 2

The figure shows axis 2 in calibration position.



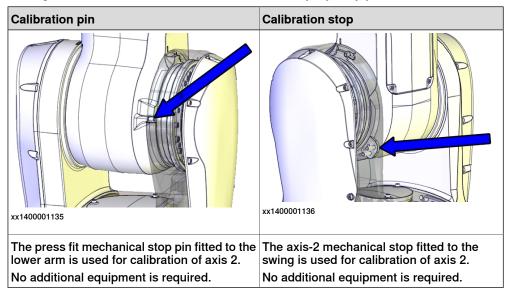
xx1400001201

Required equipment

Calibration of axis 2 is done by moving the lower arm so that the calibration pin and calibration stop touches each other gently.

These parts are already fitted to the robot, no extra installation of calibration equipment is required.

See figures below for reference, and follow the step-by-step procedure that follows.



Calibrating axis 2

Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position.	
2	DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unex- pected ways! Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	
3	Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 2 until the axis-2 calibration pin and calibration stop touches each other gently. There should be no pressing force between the pins. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision. When the axis is in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	How to release the brakes is de- tailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 74. The calibration pin and calibration stop are illustrated in Required equipment on page 850.

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1		
	Do not fine calibrate the robot without special equipment used for axis calibration! It would cause an unsatisfied accuracy in the robot movement.	
2	Choose fine calibration from Calib menu On the ABB menu, tap Calibration .	
	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown along with their calibration status.	

	Action		Note	
3	Tap to select the mechanical unit and then tap Calib. Parameters.			
		otors (topped	Dn (2 of 2) (5peed 100%)	
	Image: Counters Load Motor C Rev. Counters Edit Motor C		ration ation Offset	
	Fine Calibrat	ion		
	SMB Memory			
	Base Frame			
				Close
	Calibration			
	en0400001127			
4	Tap Fine Calibration A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use of ternal equipment to perform the actual calibrate Make sure all necessary calibration equipment fitted for the axis to be calibrated. A dialog box is displayed, warning that update the revolution counters may change programmer robot positions:	tion. nt is ting		
	 Tap Yes to proceed. Tap No to cancel. 			
5	Select the check-box for the current axis/axe be calibrated.	s to		
6	 Tap Calibrate. A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibra of the selected axes will be changed, which car be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying the proceed of the calibrate to proceed. 	nnot g a		
	cess has started. The axis is calibrated and the system returns			
6	 Tap Calibrate. A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibra of the selected axes will be changed, which car be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying dialog box, announcing that the calibration p cess has started. 	nnot g a ro-		

Checking and finalizing the calibration

	Action	Note
1	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jog- ging.	

5.6.4 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 2 *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Jog axis 2 to zero degree using the FlexPendant.	
3	 Check that the synchronization marks on axis 2 are aligned with eachother. Are they aligned within the tolerances? If yes, the calibration is verified OK. If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2

After calibration

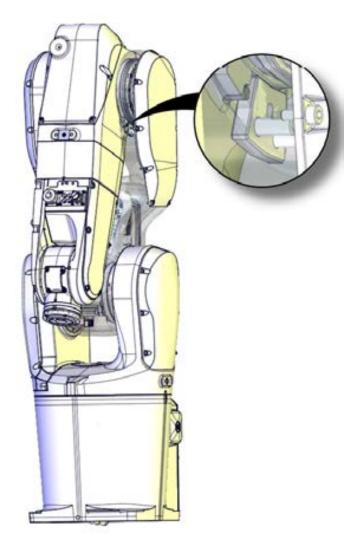
Action	Note
Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	

5.6.5 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 3

5.6.5 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 3

Calibration position of axis 3

The figure shows axis 3 in calibration position.

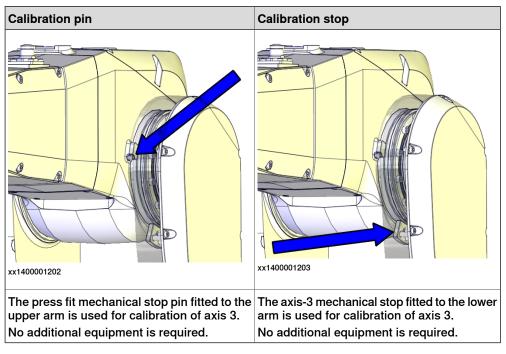


xx1400001204

Required equipment

Calibration of axis 3 is done by moving the upper arm so that the calibration pin and calibration stop touches each other gently.

These parts are already fitted to the robot, no extra installation of calibration equipment is required.



See figures below for reference, and follow the step-by-step procedure that follows the figures.

Calibrating axis 3

Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position.	
2		
	When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways!	
	Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	

	Action	Note
3	Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 3 until the axis-3 calibration calibration pin and cal- ibration stop touches each other gently. There should be no pressing force between the pins. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision. When the axis is in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	How to release the brakes is de- tailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 74. The calibration pin and calibration stop are illustrated in Required equipment on page 854.

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1		
	Do not fine calibrate the robot without special equipment used for axis calibration! It would cause an unsatisfied accuracy in the robot movement.	
2	Choose fine calibration from Calib menu On the ABB menu, tap Calibration .	
	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown along with their calibration status.	

	Action Note			
3	Tap to select the mechanical unit and then tap Calib. Parameters.			
	Manual Motors On XX MySystem 5.15 (IN-L-KBXI) Stopped (2 of 2) (Speed 100%)			
	Calibration - ROB_1			
	Load Motor Calibration Rev. Counters Edit Motor Calibration Offset			
	Fine Calibration			
	SMB Memory			
	Base Frame			
	Close			
	Calibration			
	en0400001127			
4	Tap Fine Calibration A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use ex- ternal equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated.			
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that updating the revolution counters may change programmed robot positions: Tap Yes to proceed. Tap No to cancel. 			
5	Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.			
6	Tap Calibrate.			
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. 			
	Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.			
	The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.			

Checking and finalizing the calibration

	Action	Note
1	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jog- ging.	

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Jog axis 3 to zero degree using the FlexPendant.	
3	 Check that the synchronization marks on axis 3 are aligned with eachother. Are they aligned within the tolerances? If yes, the calibration is verified OK. If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	x1400001094

After calibration

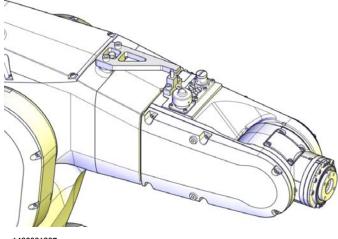
	Action	Note
1	Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	

5.6.6 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 4

5.6.6 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 4

Calibration position of axis 4

The figure shows axis 4 in calibration position, with calibration tools fitted.



xx1400001207

Required equipment

Art. no.	Note
3HAC051256-001	Includes calibration tools, pins and attachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ

same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol

Calibrating axis 4

Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position. Rotate axis 4 some degrees toward positive direc- tion to avoid interference between the calibration tools when fitting them.	

	Action	Note
2	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
3	Remove the protection cover from the housing.	xx1400001205
4	Clean the location surfaces on the housing and the calibration tool surfaces to make sure there is no paint or burrs on these surfaces.	
5	Fit the calibration block to the tubular.	Screws: M4x16.
6	Locate the calibration tool by the location surface on the housing. Tip Press down slightly on the calibration tool to make sure the tool attaches the location surface tightly.	

5.6.6 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 4 *Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Fit the conical screw to the calibration tool.	Conical screw M3 (3HAC055410- 001, 1 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm
8	Fit the M5 screws.	Screws: M5x20. Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm
9	Turn on the electric power to the robot.	
10	DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unex- pected ways! Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	
11	Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 4 until the axis-4 calibration tool and the calibration block touches each other gently. There should be no pressing force between the pins. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision. When the axis is in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	How to release the brakes is de- tailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 74.

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1	WARNING Do not fine calibrate the robot without special equipment used for axis calibration! It would cause an unsatisfied accuracy in the robot movement.	
2	Choose fine calibration from Calib menu On the ABB menu, tap Calibration . All mechanical units connected to the system are shown along with their calibration status.	
3	Tap to select the mechanical unit and then tap Ca Manual Motors MySystem_5.15 (IN-L-KBXL.) Stopped Calibration - ROB_1 Load Motor Calibre Rev. Counters Edit Motor Calibre Fine Calibration Calib. Parameters SMB Memory Load Motor Calibre Fine Calibration	On 3 (2 of 2) (Speed 100%)
	en0400001127	Close
4	 Tap Fine Calibration A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use external equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated. A dialog box is displayed, warning that updating the revolution counters may change programmed robot positions: Tap Yes to proceed. Tap No to cancel. 	
5	Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.	

	Action	Note
6	Tap Calibrate.	
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. 	
	Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.	
	The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.	

Checking and finalizing the calibration

<u></u>	ig the calibration		
	Action	Note	
1	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jog- ging.		
2	Remove the calibration tool of axes 4, 5, and 6 from the tubular.		
3	Remove the axis-4 calibration tool from the housing.		
4	Jog axis 4 to zero degree using the FlexPendant.		
5	 Check that the synchronization marks on axis 4 are aligned with eachother. Are they aligned within the tolerances? If yes, the calibration is verified OK. If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	x140001095	
6	Refit the protection cover to the housing.	xx1400001205	

5.6.6 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 4 *Continued*

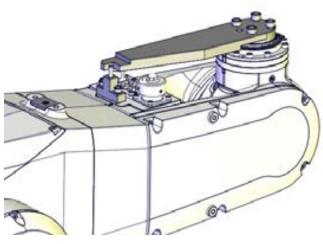
After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	

5.6.7 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 5 and axis 6

Calibration position of axes 5 and 6

The figure shows axes 5 and 6 in calibration position, with calibration tools fitted.



xx1400001206

i

Required equipment

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Calibration toolkit, manual calibra- tion		Includes calibration tools, pins and attachment screws for manual calibration method. ⁱ

The robot is calibrated by either manual calibration or Axis Calibration at factory. Always use the same calibration method as used at the factory.

Information about valid calibration method is found on the calibration label or in the calibration menu on the FlexPendant.

If no data is found related to standard calibration, manual calibration is used as default.

Required consumables

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent		Isopropanol

Calibrating axis 5 and axis 6

Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position.	
2	DANGER Turn off all: • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

5.6.7 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 5 and axis 6 *Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Fit the calibration block to the tubular.	Screws: M4x16.
4	Fit the guide pin to the disk and then fit the calib- ration tool of axes 5 and 6.	Screws: M5x16.
5	DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unex- pected ways! Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot arm!	
6	Release the brakes and manually rotate axes 5 and 6 until the axis-5/6 calibration tool and the calibration block touches each other gently. There should be no pressing force between the pins. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision. When the axis is in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	How to release the brakes is de- tailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 74.

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1	WARNING Do not fine calibrate the robot without special equipment used for axis calibration! It would cause an unsatisfied accuracy in the robot movement.	
2	Choose fine calibration from Calib menu On the ABB menu, tap Calibration . All mechanical units connected to the system are shown along with their calibration status.	
3	Tap to select the mechanical unit and then tap Ca	alib. Parameters.
	Manual MySystem_5.15 (IN-L-KBXL.) Stopped Calibration - ROB_1 Load Motor Calibre Rev. Counters Edit Motor Calibre Fine Calibration Calib. Parameters SMB Memory Load Motor Calibre Fine Calibration	ration
		Close
	en0400001127	ROB_1
4	Tap Fine Calibration	
	A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use ex- ternal equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated.	
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that updating the revolution counters may change programmed robot positions: Tap Yes to proceed. Tap No to cancel. 	
5	Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.	

5.6.7 Manual calibration method - calibrating axis 5 and axis 6 *Continued*

	Action	Note
6	Tap Calibrate.	
	 A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone: Tap Calibrate to proceed. Tap Cancel to cancel. 	
	Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.	
	The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.	

Checking and finalizing the calibration

	Action	Note
1	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jog- ging.	
2	Jog axis 5 and 6 to zero degree using the Flex- Pendant.	
3	 Check that the synchronization marks on axis 5 and axis 6 are aligned with eachother. Are they aligned within the tolerances? If yes, the calibration is verified OK. If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	xx1400001096
4	Remove the calibration block from the tubular.	
5	Remove the calibration tool of axes 5 and 6 from the disk.	

After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	

5.7 Verifying the calibration

5.7 Verifying the calibration

Introduction

Always verify the results after calibrating *any* robot axis to verify that all calibration positions are correct.

Verifying the calibration

Use this procedure to verify the calibration result.

	Action	Note
1	Run the calibration home position program twice. Do not change the position of the robot axes after running the program!	See Checking the synchron- ization position on page 870.
2	Adjust the <i>synchronization marks</i> when the calibration is done, if necessary.	This is detailed in section Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 816.
3	Write down the values on a new label and stick it on top of the calibration label. The label is located on one side of the base.	

5.8 Checking the synchronization position

5.8 Checking the synchronization position

Introduction

Check the synchronization position of the robot before beginning any programming of the robot system. This may be done:

- Using a MoveAbsJ instruction with argument zero on all axes.
- Using the **Jogging** window on the FlexPendant.Using the **Jog** window on the FlexPendant.

Using a MoveAbsJ instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	On ABB menu tap Program editor .	
2	Create a new program.	
3	Use MoveAbsJ in the Motion&Proc menu.	
4	Create the following program: MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0], [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]] \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0	
5	Run the program in manual mode.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolu- tion counters.	See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 816 and Updating revolution counters on page 819.

Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

	Action	Note
1	On the ABB menu, tap Jogging.	
2	Tap Motion mode to select group of axes to jog.	
3	Tap to select the axis to jog, axis 1, 2, or 3.	
4	Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero.	
5	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, up- date the revolution counters.	See Synchronization marks and synchron- ization position for axes on page 816 and Updating revolution counters on page 819.

5.8 Checking the synchronization position *Continued*

Using a MoveAbsJ instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Tap Code.	
2	Create a new program.	
3	Use MoveAbsJ in the Add Instruction menu.	
4	Create the following program: MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0], [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]] \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0	
5	Run the program in manual mode.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolu- tion counters.	

Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

	Action	Note
1	Tap Jog .	
2	From the Mechanical unit list select a mechanical unit.	
3	From the Motion mode section, select an axis-set that need to be jogged.	
	For example, to jog axis 2, select the axis set Axis 1-3 .	
4	Follow the screen instruction on joystick movements to understand the direction of the axis that you want to move and move the joystick.	
5	Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, up- date the revolution counters.	

This page is intentionally left blank

6 Decommissioning

6.1 Introduction to decommissioning

Introduction

This section contains information to consider when taking a product, robot or controller, out of operation.

It deals with how to handle potentially dangerous components and potentially hazardous materials.



The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Disposal of materials used in the robot

All used grease/oils and dead batteries **must** be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and the control unit are installed.

If the robot or the control unit is partially or completely disposed of, the various parts **must** be grouped together according to their nature (which is all iron together and all plastic together), and disposed of accordingly. These parts **must** also be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and control unit are installed.

See also Environmental information on page 874.

Transportation

Prepare the robot or parts before transport, this to avoid hazards.

6 Decommissioning

6.2 Environmental information

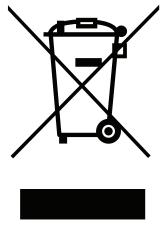
6.2 Environmental information

Introduction

ABB robots contain components in different materials. During decommissioning, all materials should be dismantled, recycled, or reused responsibly, according to the relevant laws and industrial standards. Robots or parts that can be reused or upcycled helps to reduce the usage of natural resources.

Symbol

The following symbol indicates that the product must not be disposed of as common garbage. Handle each product according to local regulations for the respective content (see table below).



xx1800000058

Materials used in the product

The table specifies some of the materials in the product and their respective use throughout the product.

Dispose components properly according to local regulations to prevent health or environmental hazards.

Material	Example application
Aluminium	Base, lower arm, upper arm
Batteries, Lithium	Encoder interface board
Cast iron/nodular iron	Gears
Copper	Cables, motors
Neodymium	Motors
Oil, grease	Gears
Stainless steel	Mechanical stop
Steel	Gears, screws, washers, brackets

6.2 Environmental information *Continued*

Oil and grease

Where possible, arrange for oil and grease to be recycled. Dispose of via an authorized person/contractor in accordance with local regulations. Do not dispose of oil and grease near lakes, ponds, ditches, down drains, or onto soil. Incineration must be carried out under controlled conditions in accordance with local regulations. Also note that:

- Spills can form a film on water surfaces causing damage to organisms. Oxygen transfer could also be impaired.
- Spillage can penetrate the soil causing ground water contamination.

6.3 Scrapping of robot

6.3 Scrapping of robot



The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Important when scrapping the robot



The risk assessment should consider hazards arising in the decommissioning, such as, but not limited to:

- Always remove all batteries. If a battery is exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, it will explode.
- Always remove all oil/grease in gearboxes. If exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, the oil/grease will catch fire.
- When motors are removed from the robot, the robot will collapse if it is not properly supported before the motor is removed.
- A used robot does not have the same performance as on delivery. Springs, brakes, bearings, and other parts might be worn or broken.

7 Robot description

7.1 Introduction

Manipulator description

IRB 1200 is one of ABB 6-axis industrial robots, with multiple variants designed to work in various environments. Different IRB 1200 variant supports to work with either IRC5/IRC5C controller or OmniCore controller, or both. The following table lists the supported controller type for IRB 1200 in different protection classes/types.

Protection	Controller type			
	IRC5	IRC5C	OmniCore C line	OmniCore E line
Standard, IP40	x	X	x	X
Standard, IP67	X	X	x	X
Clean Room	X	X	x	X
Food grade lubrication	x	X		
Foundry plus	X	X	x	X
Hygienic	X	х	x	X

For details, see Product specification - IRB 1200.

Appearance description

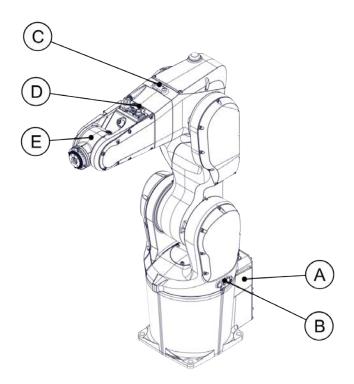
Appearance of IRB 1200 differs according to the actual order time, while robot functions remain the same.

Please note, figures throughout this product manual mainly show the original appearance design. If any installation, maintenance or replacement procedure is not required for the robots with new design, such as those related to tilt covers, skip related steps and proceed to following actions.

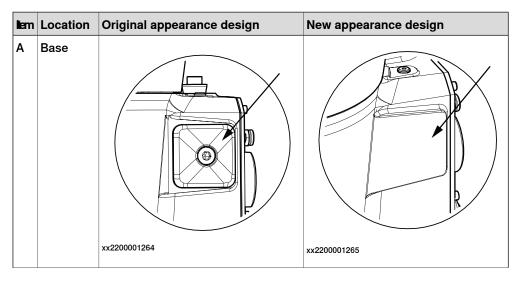
877

7.1 Introduction *Continued*

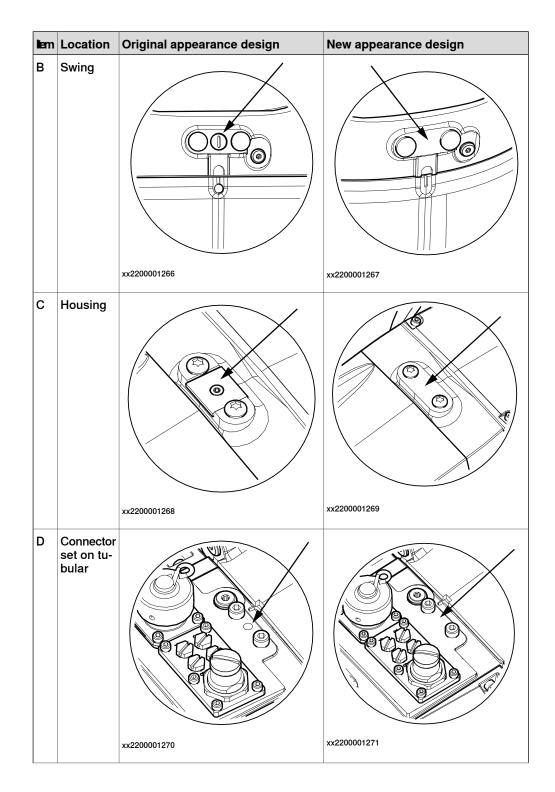
Refer to the following figure and table for detailed differences between original and new appearance design.



xx2200001263

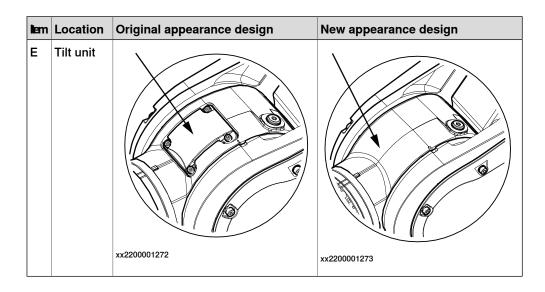


7.1 Introduction Continued



7 Robot description

7.1 Introduction *Continued*



7.2 Type A of IRB 1200

7.2 Type A of IRB 1200

Type A - Axis Calibration

The difference between IRB 1200 and IRB 1200 Type A is that the Type A is calibrated with Axis Calibration. On each axis there are bushings for installation of calibration tools.

As a result of this, the castings differ between IRB 1200 and IRB 1200 Type A.



IRB 1200 Type B is designed based on IRB 1200 Type A so that Type B has the bushings for installation of calibration tools too.

The difference between IRB 1200 Type A and IRB 1200 Type B is that Type B also supports SafeMove 2. See *Type B of IRB 1200 on page 882*.

How to know which type the robot is?

The type label on the base of the robot tells if the robot is calibrated with Axis Calibration.

Those robots are named IRB 1200 Type A.



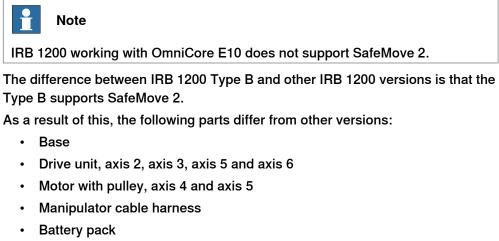
If no type label attached on the robot, use the bushings on each axis to identify a robot calibrated with Axis Calibration.

Those robots which are not equipped for Axis Calibration are simply named IRB 1200 (no type specified).

7.3 Type B of IRB 1200

7.3 Type B of IRB 1200

Type B - SafeMove 2



• SMB unit (replacing EIB unit)

IRB 1200 Type B is designed based on IRB 1200 Type A so that Type B has the bushings for installation of calibration tools too.

How to know which type the robot is?

The type label on the base of the robot tells if the robot supports SafeMove 2. Those robots are named IRB 1200 Type B.

7.4 Description of spare part versions

7.4.1 Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots

Spare part versions for the base on IP40/IP67 robots



Note

IRB 1200 has different base versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the base installed on robot and order the correct spare parts.

		·	
Base installed on robot (spare part number)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is in- stalled on robot
3HAC049628-001	3HAC044533-001	 Order: base 3HAC059553-001 swing 3HAC059554-001 or 3HAC082506-001 (depends on the calibration method used) IP40: sealing ring 3HAC068107-001 IP67: sealing ring + gasket + V-ring 3HAC059791-001 	Look on the outside of the base. Base 3HAC049628-001 has no hole on the side of the base.
3HAC057999-001	3HAC056657-001	Order: • base 3HAC059553-001	Base 3HAC057999-001 has a hole on the side of the base.
3HAC059553-001	3HAC058386-001	Order: • base 3HAC059553-001	Base 3HAC059553-001 has a bushing for fitting calibration tool for Axis Calibration.

7.4.2 Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots

7.4.2 Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots

Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots



IRB 1200 has different swing versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the swing installed on robot and order the correct spare parts.

Swing installed on ro- bot (spare part num- ber)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is installed on robot
3HAC049632-001	3HAC044534-001	Order: • swing 3HAC059554-001 • IP67: sealing ring + gasket + V-ring 3HAC059791-001	Look underneath the swing, the surface is flat.
3HAC058000-001	3HAC056656-001	Order: • swing 3HAC059554-001	Look underneath the swing, there is a groove.
			xx160000053

7 Robot description

7.4.2 Spare part versions for the swing on IP40/IP67 robots Continued

Swing installed on ro- bot (spare part num- ber)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is installed on robot
3HAC059554-001	3HAC058387-001	Order: • swing 3HAC082506-001	The swing has a bushing for fitting calibration tool for Axis Calibration.
3HAC082506-001	3HAC081401-001	Order: • swing 3HAC082506-001	The swing removes the hole for fixing the manual calibration pin.

7.4.3 Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots

7.4.3 Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots

Spare part versions for the axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots



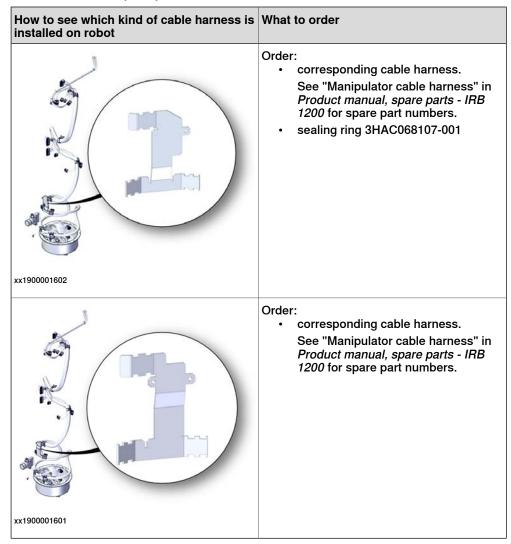
IRB 1200 has different axis-1 sealing ring versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the sealing ring installed on robot and order the correct spare parts.

Sealing ring installed on robot (spare part number)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is in- stalled on robot
3HAC044676-001	3HAC044676-001	Order: • sealing ring 3HAC044676- 001	The sealing ring is flat.
3HAC056658-001	3HAC056658-001	Order: • IP40: sealing ring 3HAC068107-001 • IP67: sealing ring + gasket + V-ring 3HAC059791-001	The sealing ring has one folded wall on both sides.
3HAC058568-001	3HAC058568-001	Order: • sealing ring 3HAC068107- 001	The sealing ring is flat and the edge is thinner.
3HAC068107-001	3HAC068107-001	Order: • sealing ring 3HAC068107- 001	The sealing ring has a gap in the inner side.

Continues on next page 886

Compatibility between cable harness and axis-1 sealing ring on IP40/IP67 robots

The manipulator cable harness is designed with different cable brackets that are compatible with different spare part versions of the axis-1 sealing ring. Always use the following list as a reference to check the cable harness installed on robot and order the correct spare parts.



7.4.4 Spare part versions for the housing on Type A robots

7.4.4 Spare part versions for the housing on Type A robots

Spare part versions for the housing on Type A robots



IRB 1200 and IRB 1200 Type A have different housing versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the housing installed on robot and to order the correct spare parts.

Robot variant	Housing installed on robot (spare part number)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is installed on robot
IRB 1200- 7/0.7	3HAC059680-001	3HAC044544-001	Order: • housing (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC059680-001	The plane (encircled in the figure) on housing 3HAC059680-001 has no
	3HAC059721-001	3HAC058389-001	Order: • housing (IRB 1200-7/0.7): 3HAC059721-001	painting, while that on housing 3HAC059721-001 is painted.
IRB 1200- 5/0.9	3HAC059681-001	3HAC04456-001	Order: • housing (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC059681-001	The plane (encircled in the figure) on housing 3HAC059681-001 has no
	3HAC059722-001	3HAC058393-001	Order: • housing (IRB 1200-5/0.9): 3HAC059722-001	painting, while that on housing 3HAC059722-001 is painted.
				xx1600001129

7.4.5 Spare part versions for the tubular on Type A robots

Spare part versions for the tubular on Type A robots



IRB 1200 and IRB 1200 Type A have different tubular versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the tubular installed on robot and to order the correct spare parts.

Tubular installed on robot (spare part number)	Article number in WebConfig	What to order	How to see which version is installed on robot
3HAC059693-001	3HAC044548-001	Order: • tubular with sleeve: 3HAC059693-001	The plane (encircled in the fig- ure) on tubular 3HAC059693- 001 has no painting, while that
3HAC059723-001	3HAC058390-001	Order: • tubular with sleeve: 3HAC059723-001	on tubular 3HAC059723-001 is painted.

7.4.6 Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots

7.4.6 Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots

Spare part versions for the tubular cover on Clean Room robots



IRB 1200 with protection type Clean Room has different tubular cover versions that are not compatible with each other. Always use the following list as a reference to check the tubular cover installed on robot and to order the correct spare parts.

Tubular cover installed on Clean Room robots (spare part number)		What to order	How to see which version is in- stalled on robot
3HAC056144-001	3HAC044550-001	Order: • tubular cover, clean room: 3HAC056144- 001	Tubular cover 3HAC056144-001 has six screw holes.
3HAC059708-001	3HAC058929-001	Order: • tubular cover, clean room: 3HAC059708- 001	Tubular cover 3HAC059708-001 has eight screw holes.

8.1 Introduction

8 Reference information

8.1 Introduction

General

This chapter includes general information, complementing the more specific information in the different procedures in the manual.

8 Reference information

8.2 Applicable standards

8.2 Applicable standards

General

The product is compliant with ISO 10218-1:2011, *Robots for industrial environments* - *Safety requirements - Part 1 Robots*, and applicable parts in the normative references, as referred to from ISO 10218-1:2011. In case of deviation from ISO 10218-1:2011, these are listed in the declaration of incorporation. The declaration of incorporation is part of the delivery.

Robot standards

Standard	Description
ISO 9283	Manipulating industrial robots – Performance criteria and re- lated test methods
ISO 9787	Robots and robotic devices – Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures
ISO 9946	Manipulating industrial robots – Presentation of characteristics

Other standards used in design

Standard	Description	
IEC 60204-1	Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements, normative reference from ISO 10218- 1	
IEC 61000-6-2	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity standard for industrial environments	
IEC 61000-6-4	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-4: Generic standards – Emission standard for industrial environments	
ISO 13849-1:2006	Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems - Part 1: General principles for design, normative reference from ISO 10218-1	
IEC 61340-5-1	Protection of electronic devices from electrostatic phenomena - General requirements	

Region specific standards and regulations

Standard	Description
ANSI/RIA R15.06	Safety requirements for industrial robots and robot systems
ANSI/UL 1740	Safety standard for robots and robotic equipment
CAN/CSA Z 434-03	Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety require- ments
ANSI/ESD S20.20	Protection of Electrical and Electronic Parts, Assemblies and Equipment (Excluding Electrically Initiated Explosive Devices)
EN ISO 10218-1	Robots and robotic devices — Safety requirements for indus- trial robots — Part 1: Robots

8.3 Unit conversion

8.3 Unit conversion

Converter table

Use the following table to convert units used in this manual.

Quantity	Units		
Length	1 m	3.28 ft.	39.37 in
Weight	1 kg	2.21 lb.	
Weight	1 g	0.035 ounces	
Pressure	1 bar	100 kPa	14.5 psi
Force	1 N	0.225 lbf	
Moment	1 Nm	0.738 lbf-ft	
Volume	1 L	0.264 US gal	

8 Reference information

8.4 Screw joints

8.4 Screw joints

	This section describes how robots.	to tighten the various types of	of screw joints on ABB										
	-		nts comprised of metallic										
UNBRAKO screws													
		-	•										
	type of replacement screw i	s allowed. Using other types	of screws will void any										
Gleitmo treated scr	ews												
	screw joint. It is recommend with Gleitmo may be reused screw must be discarded an	led by ABB for M6-M20 screw 3-4 times before the coating nd replaced with a new one.	w joints. Screws treated disappears. After this the										
	type should be used.	led with Gleitho, protective g	noves of milline rubber										
	Geomet 702 in proportion 1	:3. <i>Geomet</i> thickness varies											
	The instructions and torque values are valid for screw joints comprised of metallimaterials and do <i>not</i> apply to soft or brittle materials. UNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw joints. It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extreme resistant to fatigue. Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, <i>no other type of replacement screw</i> is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury. Gleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this the screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one. When handling screws treated with Gleitmo, protective gloves of nitrile rubber												
	materials and do not apply to soft or brittle materials.screwsUNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw join It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extreme resistant to fatigue. Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, no othe type of replacement screw is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury.ated screwsGleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this ti screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one.When handling screws treated with Gleitmo 603 mixed with Geomet 500 or Geomet 702 in proportion 1:3. Geomet thickness varies according to screw dimensions, refer to the following.DimensionLubricantGeomet thickness M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720 3-5 µmM20x60Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720 3-5 µm												
	M20x60)												
	M6-M20 (any length except		3-5 μm										
	M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)	Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720											
	M6-M20 (any length except M20x60) M20x60	Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720 Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 500	8-12 µm										

- 2 Apply lubricant between the plain washer and screw head.
- 3 Tighten to the torque as described in the procedures.

Lubricant	Article number
Molykote 1000 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC042472-001
Molykote P1900 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC070875-001

Continues on next page

8.4 Screw joints Continued

Tightoning	torquo	
Fightening	lorque	

Before tightening any screw, note the following:

- Determine whether a standard tightening torque or special torque is to be applied. The standard torques are specified in the following tables. Any special torques are specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions. Any special torque specified overrides the standard torque!
- Use the correct tightening torque for each type of screw joint.
- Only use correctly calibrated torque keys.
- Always tighten the joint by hand, and never use pneumatic tools.
- Use the correct tightening technique, that is do not jerk. Tighten the screw in a slow, flowing motion.
- Maximum allowed total deviation from the specified value is 10%!

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws.



A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws.



A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension		tening torque (Nm) Tightening torque (Nm) T s 8.8, oil-lubricated Class 10.9, oil-lubric- ated a		
M5	6	-	-	
M6	10	-	-	
M8	24	34	40	
M10	47	67	80	
M12	82	115	140	
M16	200	290	340	
M20	400	560	670	
M24	680	960	1150	

8.4 Screw joints *Continued*

Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for screws lubricated with Molycote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent with allen head screws.



A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, lubricated ⁱ	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, lubricated ^{<i>i</i>}
M5		8
M6		14
M8	28	35
M10	55	70
M12	96	120
M16	235	300
M20	460	550
M24	790	950

i Lubricated with Molycote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent

8.5 Weight specifications

8.5 Weight specifications

Definition

In installation, repair, and maintenance procedures, weights of the components handled are sometimes specified. All components exceeding 22 kg (50 lbs) are highlighted in this way.

To avoid injury, ABB recommends the use of a lifting accessory when handling components with a weight exceeding 22 kg. A wide range of lifting accessories and devices are available for each manipulator model.

Example

Following is an example of a weight specification in a procedure:

Action	Note
! CAUTION The arm weighs 25 kg.	
All lifting accessories used must be sized accord- ingly.	

8.6 Standard toolkit

8.6 Standard toolkit

General

All service (repairs, maintenance, and installation) procedures contains lists of tools required to perform the specified activity.

All special tools required are listed directly in the procedures while all the tools that are considered standard are gathered in the standard toolkit and defined in the following table.

This way, the tools required are the sum of the standard toolkit and any tools listed in the instruction.

Contents, standard toolkit

Qty	ТооІ	Rem.
1	Socket head cap 2-17 mm	
1	Torque wrench 0.3-45 Nm	
1	Torque wrench 55 Nm ± 5 Nm	For securing robot to foundation.
1	Ratchet head for torque wrench 1/2	
1	Hex socket head cap no. 2.5 socket 1/2" bit L=110 mm	
1	Small screwdriver	
1	T-handle with ball head	
1	Small cutting plier	
1	Plastic mallet	
1	Needle-nose plier	

8.7 Special tools

8.7 Special tools

General

All service instructions contain lists of tools required to perform the specified activity. The required tools are a sum of standard tools, defined in the section *Standard toolkit on page 898*, and of special tools, listed directly in the instructions and also gathered in this section.

Special tools

8 Reference information

8.7 Special tools

Tools and equipment with spare part number: (These tools can be ordered from ABB)		Cable harness	EIB/SMB unit	Axis-4 FPC unit	Axis-5 FPC unit	Housing extender unit (including sealings)	Base spare parts	Swing spare parts	Lower arm	Signal lamp	Axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring	Axis-1 mechanical stop	Axis-2 mechanical stop	Axis-3 mechanical stop	Axis-4 mechanical stop	Tubular spare parts	Axis-4 motor with pulley	Axis-5 motor with pulley	Axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit	Axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley	Axis-4 timing belt	Axis-5 timing belt	
	Guide pins																						
3HAC049703-001	Guide pin for axis-1 gear unit		3					3	3														
3HAC049704-001	Guide pin for axis-2 gear unit								3	3													
3HAC049705-001	Guide pin for upper arm									3													
3HAC049706-001	Guide pin for tilt unit (axis 5)																3			3			
3HAC079684-001	Guide pin for stainless shaft on tool flange	xx2100001461															2			2			
	Lifting accessories																						
3HAC049711-001	Lifting accessory, robot Includes lifting accessories, lifting beam and screws.	x140000542	1					1															
-	Roundsling, 2 m Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.		1					1	1														
	Press, puller and unloading to	ols																					
3HAC049692-001	Axis-1 sealing assembly tool set Used to refit the axis-1 radial sealing.	xx140000535						1															

Continues on next page

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X

	ls and equipment with spare part (These tools can be ordered from		Cable harness	EIB/SMB unit	Axis-4 FPC unit	Axis-5 FPC unit	Housing extender unit (including sealings)	Base spare parts	Swing spare parts	Lower arm	Signal lamp	Axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring	Axis-1 mechanical stop	Axis-2 mechanical stop	Axis-3 mechanical stop	Axis-4 mechanical stop	Tubular spare parts	Axis-4 motor with pulley	Axis-5 motor with pulley	Axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit	Axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley	Axis-4 timing belt	Axis-5 timing belt
3HAC049694-001	Axis-2 sealing assembly tool set Used to refit the radial sealing, if replacement is needed.	xx140000541							1														
3HAC049697-001	Axis-3 sealing assembly tool set Used to refit the axis-3 radial sealing.	xx140000538										1											
3HAC049699-001	Axis-4 sealing assembly tool set Used to refit the radial sealing, if replacement is needed.	xx140000539			1											1					1		
3HAC049701-001	Axis-5 sealing assembly tool set Used to refit the radial sealing, if replacement is needed.	xx140000540				1											1			1			
	Other tools				1		_		1		1												
-	24 VDC power supply		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
3HAC051256-001	Calibration toolkit, manual calibration		1		1		1	1	1	1							1	1	1	1	1	1	1

8 Reference information

8.7 Special tools



8 Reference information

8.7 Special tools

	ols and equipment with spare part (These tools can be ordered from		Cable harness	EIB/SMB unit	Axis-4 FPC unit	Axis-5 FPC unit	Housing extender unit (including sealings)	Base spare parts	Swing spare parts	Lower arm	Signal lamp	Axis-3 radial sealing and sealing ring	Axis-1 mechanical stop	Axis-2 mechanical stop	Axis-3 mechanical stop	Axis-4 mechanical stop	Tubular spare parts	Axis-4 motor with pulley	Axis-5 motor with pulley	Axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit	Axis-4 gearbox, drive shaft and pulley	Axis-4 timing belt	Axis-5 timing belt
3HAC074119-001	Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration		1		1		1	1	1	1							1	1	1	1	1	1	1
3HAC079686-001	Flange tightening tool	xx2100001462															1			1			
3HAC082459-001	Customer interface kit Used for interconversion of cabling with bottom interface and cabling with rear interface																						

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X

8.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

8.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

General

Many repair and maintenance activities require different pieces of lifting accessories, which are specified in each procedure.

The use of each piece of lifting accessories is *not* detailed in the activity procedure, but in the instruction delivered with each piece of lifting accessories.

The instructions delivered with the lifting accessories should be stored for later reference.

This page is intentionally left blank

9.1 Spare part lists and illustrations

9 Spare parts

9.1 Spare part lists and illustrations

Location

Spare parts and exploded views are not included in the manual but delivered as a separate document for registered users on myABB Business Portal, *www.abb.com/myABB*.



All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

This page is intentionally left blank

10 Circuit diagrams

10.1 Circuit diagrams

Overview

The circuit diagrams are not included in this manual, but are available for registered users on myABB Business Portal, <u>www.abb.com/myABB</u>.

See the article numbers in the tables below.

Controllers

Product	Article numbers for circuit diagrams
Circuit diagram - OmniCore C30, Circuit dia- gram - OmniCore C30 for IRB 14050, Circuit diagram - OmniCore C30 for CRB 15000	
Circuit diagram - OmniCore C90XT	3HAC065464-009
Circuit diagram - OmniCore E10	3HAC076810-008
Circuit diagram - IRC5	3HAC024480-011
Circuit diagram - IRC5 Compact	3HAC049406-003

Manipulators

Product	Article numbers for circuit diagrams
Circuit diagram - IRB 120	3HAC031408-003
Circuit diagram - IRB 140 type C	3HAC6816-3
Circuit diagram - IRB 260	3HAC025611-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 360	3HAC028647-009
Circuit diagram - IRB 390	3HAC060545-009
Circuit diagram - IRB 460	3HAC036446-005
Circuit diagram - IRB 660	3HAC025691-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 760	3HAC025691-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 1200	3HAC046307-003
Circuit diagram - IRB 1410	3HAC2800-3
Circuit diagram - IRB 1600/1660	3HAC021351-003
Circuit diagram - IRB 1520	3HAC039498-007
Circuit diagram - IRB 2400	3HAC6670-3
Circuit diagram - IRB 2600	3HAC029570-007
Circuit diagram - IRB 4400/4450S	3HAC9821-1
Circuit diagram - IRB 4600	3HAC029038-003
Circuit diagram - IRB 6620	3HAC025090-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 6620 / IRB 6620LX	3HAC025090-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 6640	3HAC025744-001

10 Circuit diagrams

10.1 Circuit diagrams *Continued*

Product	Article numbers for circuit diagrams
Circuit diagram - IRB 6650S	3HAC13347-1 3HAC025744-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 6660	3HAC025744-001 3HAC029940-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 6700 / IRB 6790	3HAC043446-005
Circuit diagram - IRB 7600	3HAC13347-1 3HAC025744-001
Circuit diagram - IRB 14000	3HAC050778-003
Circuit diagram - IRB 910SC	3HAC056159-002

Index

A

Absolute Accuracy, calibration, 813 allergenic material, 32 aluminum disposal, 874 ambient humidity operation, 56 storage, 56 ambient temperature operation, 56 storage, 56 assembly instructions, 43 assessment of hazards and risks, 32 axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit replacing, 783 axis-5 FPC unit replacing, 284 axis-5 motor replacing, 764 axis-5 timing belt replacing, 776 axis-4 FPC unit replacing, 252 axis-4 gear unit replacing, 693 axis-4 motor replacing, 734 axis-4 pulley replacing, 693 axis-4 shaft replacing, 693 axis-4 timing belt replacing, 746 axis-3 radial sealing replacing, 425 sealing ring replacing, 425 axis-3 drive unit replacing, 671 axis-3 gearbox replacing, 671 axis-3 motor replacing, 671 axis-2 drive unit replacing, 649 Axis Calibration, 823 calibration tool article number, 826, 831 examining, 826 installation position, 829 overview of method, 823 procedure on FlexPendant, 831, 839 protective cover and protection plug, 829, 831

В

base replacing, 499 batteries disposal, 874 battery replacing, 138 battery shutdown service routine, 138 brakes testing function, 40 С cabinet lock, 33 cable package main replacing, 176 cabling, robot, 109 cabling between robot and controller, 109 calibrating robot, 823 roughly, 819, 822 calibrating robot, 823, 839 calibration Absolute Accuracy type, 812 rough, 819, 822 standard type, 812 verification, 869 when to calibrate, 815 calibration, Absolute Accuracy, 813 calibration manuals, 814 calibration marks, 816 calibration position jogging to, 870-871 scales, 816 calibration scales, 816 CalibWare, 812 carbon dioxide extinguisher, 33 cast iron disposal, 874 cleaning, 153 Hygienic robots, 158 climbing on robot, 36 Cold environments, 117 connecting the robot and controller, cabling, 109 copper disposal, 874

D

damage to mechanical stop, 130 detergents, 159 dimensions robot, 87 direction of axes, 818 drive unit axis-3, 671 axis-2, 649

Ē

EIB/SMB battery extension of lifetime, 138 replacing, 138 EIB unit replacing, 298 environmental information, 874 equipment, robot, 87 equipment on robot, fitting, 88 ESD damage elimination, 67 sensitive equipment, 67 extra equipment, 87

F

fire extinguishing, 33 fitting extra equipment, 88 fitting, equipment, 87 FlexPendant jogging to calibration position, 870–871 MoveAbsJ instruction, 870–871 updating revolution counters, 819, 822 foundation requirements, 55 FPC unit axis-5, 284 axis-4, 252

G

gearbox axis-3, 671 axis-2, 649 gear unit axis-4, 693 Gravity Alpha, 82 Gravity Beta, 81 grease, 36 disposal, 874

Н

hanging installed hanging, 32 hazard levels, 23 hazardous material, 874 height installed at a height, 32 hot surfaces, 36 housing extender unit replacing, 252 sealings, 252 HRA, 32 humidity operation, 56 storage, 56

I

information labels location, 125 inspecting information labels, 125 mechanical stop, 130 paint, 123 robot cabling, 124 timing belts, 133 installation equipment, 87 instructions for assembly, 43 integrator responsibility, 32 intervals for maintenance, 121

Ļ

labels robot, 25 lamp unit installing, 97, 100 lifting accessory, 73 lifting accessory, 897 limitation of liability, 21 Lithium disposal, 874 loads on foundation, 54 lock and tag, 33 lower arm replacing, 315 lubricants, 36

Μ

main power connector, o-ring, 111 maintenance intervals, 121 maintenance schedule, 121 mechanical stop axis-4, 467 axis-3, 464 axis-2, 461 axis-1, 645 mechanical stop location, 130 motor axis-6, 783 axis-5, 764 axis-4, 734 axis-3, 671 motor unit axis-2, 649 mounting, equipment, 87 MoveAbsJ instruction, 870-871

Ν

national regulations, 32 negative directions, axes, 818 neodymium disposal, 874 nodular iron disposal, 874

0

oil, 36 disposal, 874 operating conditions, 56 option signal lamp, 97, 100 original spare parts, 21 o-rings, enclosed with robot, 78, 111 o-rings, extra at delivery, 44

Ρ

paint inspecting, 123 pedestal installed on pedestal, 32 personnel requirements, 22 positive directions, axes, 818 **PPE. 22** product standards, 892 protection classes, 56 protection sleeve, base replacing, 499 protection type, 56 protective equipment, 22 protective wear, 22 pulley axis-5, 764

R

radial sealing axis-4, replacing, 252 axis-2, replacing, 579 axis-1, replacing, 499 recycling, 874 regional regulations, 32 release brakes, 39 replacements, report, 163 replacing

axis-5 and axis-6 drive unit, 783 axis-5 FPC unit, 284 axis-5 motor with pulley, 764 axis-5 pulley, 764 axis-5 timing belt, 776 axis-4 FPC unit, 252 axis-4 gear unit, 693 axis-4 motor, 734 axis-4 pulley, 693 axis-4 shaft, 693 axis-4 timing belt, 746 axis-3 radial sealing, 425 sealing ring, 425 axis-3 drive unit, 671 axis-3 gearbox, 671 axis-3 motor, 671 axis-2 drive unit, 649 axis-2 gearbox, 649 axis-2 motor unit, 649 base, 499 cable package main, 176 EIB unit, 298 housing extender unit, 252 lower arm, 315 mechanical stop axis-4, 467 axis-3, 464 axis-2, 461 axis-1, 645 protection sleeve, base, 499 radial sealing, axis-4, 252 radial sealing, axis-2, 579 radial sealing, axis-1, 499 signal lamp, 384 SMB unit, 298 swing, 579 tubular, 387 UL-lamp, 384 report replacements, 163 requirements on foundation, 55 responsibility and validity, 21 revolution counters storing on FlexPendant, 819, 822 updating, 819, 822 risk of burns, 36 risk of tipping, 65 robot dimensions, 87 equipment, fitting, 87 labels, 25 protection class, 56 protection types, 56 symbols, 25 robot cabling inspecting, 124 S safety brake testing, 40 ESD. 67 fire extinguishing, 33 release robot axes, 39

test run, 118 safety devices, 33 safety equipment signal lamp, 136 safety hazard hydraulic system, 34 pneumatic system, 34 safety signals in manual, 23 safety standards, 892 scales on robot, 816 schedule of maintenance, 121 screw joints, 894 securing, robot, 77 shipping, 873 signal lamp installing, 97, 100 replacing, 384 signals safety, 23 SMB unit replacing, 298 speed adjusting, 117 stability, 65 stainless steel disposal, 874 standards, 892 ANSI, 892 CAN, 892 start of robot in cold environments, 117 steel disposal, 874 storage conditions, 56 suspended mounting, 81 swing replacing, 579 symbols safety, 23 synchronization position, 819, 822 sync marks, 816 system integrator requirements, 32 system parameter Gravity Alpha, 82 Gravity Beta, 81 т temperatures operation, 56 storage, 56 testing brakes. 40 tilted mounting, 81 timing belts inspecting, 133 torques on foundation, 54

Product manual - IRB 1200 3HAC046983-001 Revision: X

signals in manual, 23

symbols on robot, 25

signals, 23

symbols, 23

transportation, 873

replacing, 387

accessory, 73 type A, 881

troubleshooting

safety, 41

tubular

turning

type B, 882

Transportation bracket, 47, 66, 68

U

UL lamp replacing, 384 upcycling, 874 updating revolution counters, 819, 822 users requirements, 22

V

validity and responsibility, 21 velocity adjusting, 117 verifying calibration, 869

w

wall mounting, 81 weight, 53 robot, 72 Wrist Optimization overview of method, 839

Ζ

zero position checking, 870



ABB AB Robotics & Discrete Automation S-721 68 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden Telephone +46 10-732 50 00

ABB AS

Robotics & Discrete Automation Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

ABB Engineering (Shanghai) Ltd.

Robotics & Discrete Automation No. 4528 Kangxin Highway PuDong New District SHANGHAI 201319, China Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

ABB Inc.

Robotics & Discrete Automation 1250 Brown Road Auburn Hills, MI 48326 USA Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

abb.com/robotics